This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

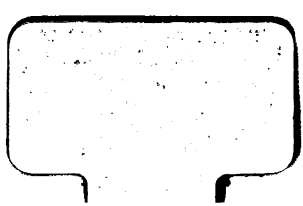
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 08231312 7



RIO
Smith

William Carroll

THE

NEW-HAMPSHIRE

LATIN GRAMMAR:

COMPREHENDING

ALL THE NECESSARY RULES IN

ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, AND PROSODY;

WITH

EXPLANATORY AND CRITICAL NOTES, AND AN APPENDIX.

BY JOHN SMITH, A.M. ex ego
Professor of the Learned Languages, at DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.

Nihil ex Grammatica nocuerit, nisi quod supervacuum est.
Quintil. Instit. Oratoriar. Lib. I. *Cap.* VII.

Published according to Act of Congress.

BOSTON:

PRINTED FOR JOHN WEST, NO. 75, CORNHILL,
BY E. LINCOLN.

1802.

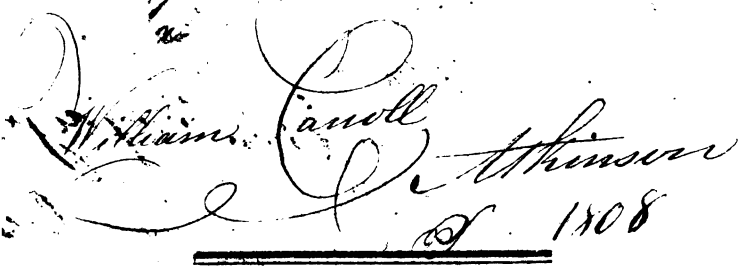
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
94395B
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
1910

Purchase Anderson Auction Co.,
Sale of Dec. 19, 1911, # 6

The Latin Grammars in general use today

"Salve aeternum mihi, maxime Palla,
Aeternumque vale" V. XI - 96

Te suspicor iisdem rebus,
quibus meipsum in tui
desiderium gravius commovi.
C. Sacra

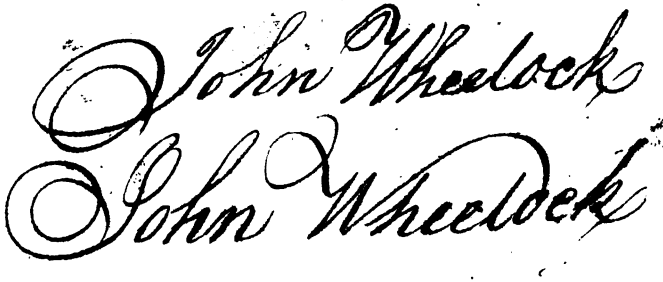


DARTMOUTH COLLEGE, October 25, 1800.

THE Latin Grammars in general use having been found insufficient to answer the purposes desirable from them; and the Reverend John Smith, Professor of the Learned Languages at this College, having compiled one adapted to remedy that inconvenience:

It is, therefore, resolved by the Government of said College, that said Grammar of the Reverend Professor Smith, so soon as it shall be published, be used by the Students of this Institution.

JOHN WHEELOCK, *President.*



Nothing of Grammar hurts unless that which is superfluous.

Nothing of Grammar hurts unless that which is superfluous

O suscepti labores! O ipes fallaces! O cogitationes incassum meas

Macillan Case 1806

THE

NEWHAMPSHIRE

LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

GRAMMAR is the art of ſpeaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of ſpeaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

Grammar conſiſts of four parts; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Proſody.

Orthography treats of letters, diphthongs, ſyllables, and punctuation.

Etymology treats of words and their diviſion, or the parts of ſpeech.

Syntax treats of the right placing or joining of words together, in ſentences.

Proſody teaches the quantity of ſyllables, and treats of accent and verſe.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

SECTION I.

Of the Number and Diviſion of Letters.

1. The letters, which are now chiefly uſed in books, are the Roman or Latin. But,

2. Emphatical words and ſentences, and quotations, are often diſtinguiſhed by Italic letters. And,

3. In the Bible, ſuch words as are not in the original, but ſupplied by the tranſlators, are printed in *Italic*.

4. In Engliſh there are twenty ſix letters; namely,

ROMAN OR LATIN.		ITALIC.		PRONOUNCED.
Capital.	*Small.*	*Capital.*	*Small.*	
A	a	*A*	*a*	a or ay
B	b	*B*	*b*	bee
C	c	*C*	*c*	ſee
D	d	*D*	*d*	dee
E	e	*E*	*e*	e
F	f	*F*	*f*	eff
G	g	*G*	*g*	jee
H	h	*H*	*h*	aitch
I	i	*I*	*i*	i
J	j	*J*	*j*	jay
K	k	*K*	*k*	ka
L	l	*L*	*l*	ell
M	m	*M*	*m*	em
N	n	*N*	*n*	en
O	o	*O*	*o*	o
P	p	*P*	*p*	pee
Q	q	*Q*	*q*	cue
R	r	*R*	*r*	ar
S	ſ s	*S*	*ſ s*	eſs
T	t	*T*	*t*	tee
V	v	*V*	*v*	vee
U	u	*U*	*u*	u or yu
W	w	*W*	*w*	double u
X	x	*X*	*x*	ecks
Y	y	*Y*	*y*	wi
Z	z	*Z*	*z*	zed or zee

5. To the alphabet may be subjoined & or &, in Engliſh denoting *and*, in Latin, *et*.

6. *W* is not uſed in Latin words; nor are *k*, *y*, and *z*, unleſs in ſuch as are derived from the Greek.

7. The firſt diviſion of letters is into vowels and conſonants.

SECTION II.

Of the Vowels and Diphthongs.

1. A VOWEL makes a complete ſound by itſelf; as, *a*, *e*, *o*.*

2. There are five proper vowels; *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*. To theſe may be added *y* in Latin and Engliſh, and *w* in Engliſh; which, although they are uſed as conſonants, at the beginning, yet are vowels, at the end or middle of ſyllables.†

3. A diphthong is the meeting of two vowels in one ſyllable, and is either *proper* or *improper*.

4. If the ſound of both vowels is diſtinctly heard, it is called a *proper diphthong*; if not, an *improper diphthong*.

5. There are ſeven proper diphthongs in Latin; *ai*, *au*, *ei*, *eu*, *oi*, *ua*, and *ui*; as, in *Maia*, *aurum*, *omneis*, *Eurus*, *Troia*, *ſuadeo*, *Harpuia*.

6. The improper diphthongs in Latin are *ae* and *oe*, or *æ*, when the vowels are written together; as in *aetas* or *ætas*, *poena*, or *pœna*; in both of which the ſound of *e* only is heard.‡

SECTION

* A vowel is a *ſimple ſound*; the ſounds formed by the concourſe of vowels and conſonants are *articulate ſounds*.

† *W*, when a vowel, is ſounded like *u*; and *y*, like *i*, or *e*. N. B. *W* is often ſilent; as, in *row*, *ſow*, *ſower*, &c.

‡ The diphthongs *ae* and *oe* are never uſed in Engliſh, excepting in a few words of Latin or Greek derivation. The ancients commonly wrote them ſeparately. The Engliſh language abounds with improper diphthongs, to learn accurately the juſt pronunciation of which practice is requiſite.

In ſome Engliſh words derived from the French, three vowels meet and coaleſce in one ſyllable; which meeting and coalition of vowels is called a Triphthong; as, in *lieutenant*.

SECTION III.

Of the Conſonants.

1. A CONSONANT cannot make a perfect ſound without a vowel; as, *b*, *d*, *p*.

2. The following letters are conſonants, *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *ſ*, *t*, *v*, *x*, *z*, and *w* and *y* at the beginning of ſyllables.

3. The conſonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, *Liquids*, and *Double Conſonants*.

4. The mutes are *c*, *k*, *p*, *q* and *t*.* *B*, *d*, *g*, and *v*, may be called ſemi-mutes.

5. *L*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s* and *f* are called ſemi-vowels. The firſt four of theſe are alſo termed *liquids*, becauſe they flow ſoftly and eaſily after a *mute* in the ſame ſyllable.†

6. The double conſonants are *j*, *x* and *z*. They have the ſound of two conſonants; thus, *j* ſounds nearly like *d* and ſoft *g*; *x* like *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*; and *z* much like *ds*.‡

7. *C* is ſounded hard like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*; but commonly ſoft like *s*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, and an apoſtrophe denoting the abſence of *e*.

8. *G* is ſounded hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*, and before *h* in the beginning of words; but uſually ſoft like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, and an apoſtrophe.

9. *H* is not accounted a letter, but only a note of aſpiration.

SECTION

---

* A mute is ſo called, becauſe it entirely ſtops the paſſage of the voice; as, *c* in *ac*.

† The mutes and ſemi-vowels may be thus diſtinguiſhed. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *be*, *ce*; but in naming the ſemi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el*, *em*, *en*.

‡ *Z* ſeems not to be a double conſonant in Engliſh. It has about the ſame relation to *s*, that *v* has to *f*.

SECTION IV.

Of Syllables.

1. A SYLLABLE is the ſound of one letter, or of two or more letters pronounced by one impulſe of the voice; as, *a, in, am.*

2. In every word there are as many ſyllables, as there are diſtinct ſounds; as, *hap-pi-neſs.*

3. In Latin there are as many ſyllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it.

4. Words of one ſyllable are called *Monoſyllables*; of two, *Diſſyllables*; and of more than two, *Polyſyllables.*

5. In dividing words into ſyllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear.*

SECTION V.

Of Capitals and Abbreviations.

THE Capitals, or great letters, muſt never be written in the middle, nor at the end of a word;† but at the beginning only, according to the following rules.

1. The firſt word of every ſentence, and of every line in poetry, and of proper names,‡ muſt begin with capitals.

2. The pronoun I and the interjection O muſt always be capitals.‖

3. Words

* Compound words, however, ſhould be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on, with-out*; and ſo in Latin words, *ab-itur, in-ops, præter-ea, vel-ut.*

† Excepting in anagrams and acroſtics.

‡ All names belonging to the true God, all names of heathen gods and goddeſſes, and all proper names of perſons, countries, kingdoms, ſtates, provinces, cities, public offices, &c. muſt begin with capitals.

‖ Sometimes, when ſomething very extraordinary is expreſſed, whole ſentences are written and printed in capitals; as, THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS.

3. Words are ſometimes expreſſed by only one or a few of their letters, uſually, although not always, in capitals ;* as, A. B. or B. A. *Baccalaureus Artium, Bachelor of Arts.* A. M. or M. A. *Magiſter Artium, Maſter of Arts ;* or *Anno Mundi, in the year of the world.* S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populuſque Romanus.* P. R. *Populus Romanus.* P. C. *Patres Conſcripti.* A. D. *Anno Domini.* M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor.* LL. D. *Legum Doctor.* D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat.* D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, conſecratque.*†

4. Sometimes capitals ſtand for Latin names of men and women ; as, A. *Aulus ;* C. *Caius* or *Caia ;* D. *Decius ;* G. *Gaius ;* L. *Lucius* or *Lucia ;* M. *Marcus* or *Marcia ;* P. *Publius ;* Q. *Quintus.*

N. B. *The Romans had often three, and ſometimes four names ; as,* Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus. *The firſt was the prænomen, or proper name of a perſon ; the ſecond, his nomen, or the name of his anceſtors ; the third, his cognomen, or the name of his particular family ; the fourth, his agnomen, or name given him to commemorate ſome illuſtrious action or exploit.*

5. Capitals were alſo uſed by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers ; as, I. *one,* V. *five,* X. *ten,* L. *fifty,* and C. *a hundred.*‡

SECTION

---

* With a point, or mark of a period, after them.

† Sometimes a ſmall letter or two may be added to the capital ; as, Etc. *Et cætera ;* Ap. *Appius ;* Cn. *Cneius ;* Sp. *Spurius ;* Ti. *Tiberius ;* Sex. *Sextus ;* Cos. *Conſul ;* Coſs. *Conſules ;* Imp. *Imperator ;* Impp. *Imperatores.*

In like manner, in Engliſh, Eſq. *Eſquire ;* Dr. *Debtor or Doctor ;* Do. *Ditto ;* Rt. Hon. *Right Honorable.*

Small letters are alſo uſed for abbreviations of words ; as, i. e. *id eſt ;* h. e. *hoc eſt ;* e. g. *exempli gratia ;* v. g. *verbi gratia.*

‡ M ſtands for 1000, becauſe the firſt letter of mille, *a thouſand,* is M. A thouſand was formerly marked thus, CIↃ, which, in later times was contracted into M.

D, the firſt letter of Dimidium, ſtands for 500, becauſe it is the half of a thouſand. It was formerly written thus, IↃ. C ſtands for a hundred, becauſe it is the firſt letter of centum.

A hundred was formerly marked L. L. half of which is L. *fifty.* V ſtands for five, becauſe the Roman meaſure of five ounces was of that ſhape.

X denotes ten, becauſe it is made up of two Vs.

I expreſſes

ex conſule

SECTION VI.

Of Stops and Points, and Marks or Notes.

1. The ſtops and points uſed in writing and reading are nine, viz. the Comma (,); Semicolon (;); Colon (:); Period (.); Point of Interrogation (?); Point of Admiration or Exclamation (!); Parentheſis (); Brackets or Crotchets []; and the Blank Line (—).

2. The *comma* uſually requires a pauſe, while the reader can deliberately pronounce *one*. It ſeparates the ſmall members of ſentences; as, *the Lord God is merciful, long-ſuffering, ſlow to anger, abounding in goodneſs and truth.* It is uſed after every diſtinct noun and verb, when a copulative is omitted; as, *the enemy advanced with drums, trumpets, clarions, fifes,* &c. *and fought with guns, ſwords, ſpears,* &c. *This man laughs, ſings, dances, whiſtles; and then cries, ſwears, roars, prays.*

The comma diſtinguiſhes adverbs of contrary meaning, and ſuch as are emphatic, or ſeparated, by a circumſtance, from the terms they qualify.* The caſe abſolute; ſeveral nouns in appoſition; a participle with ſomething depending on it, are to be diſtinguiſhed by a comma.

When an addreſs is made to a perſon, whether in the vocative, nominative, or accuſative, in Latin, the noun is marked by a comma; as is alſo the noun anſwering to it, in Engliſh.

"*This ſaid, he form'd thee, Adam; thee, O man,*
Duſt of the ground."
"*Now morn, her roſy ſteps in th' eaſtern clime*
Advancing, ſow'd the earth with orient pearl."

MILTON.

Two

I expreſſes one, becauſe it is made by one ſtroke of the pen, or becauſe it is the firſt letter of Initium.

We ſometimes find *thouſands* expreſſed by a ſtraight line drawn over the top of numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{III}$, denotes *three thouſand*; $\overline{X}$, *ten thouſand.*

When a letter of a leſs value is placed before a letter of a greater, the leſs takes away what it ſtands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it ſtands for to the greater; as, IV, *four*; VI, *ſix.*

* In the two laſt mentioned ſituations, an adverb requires a comma on each ſide.

Two nouns, or verbs, or two adjectives, connected by a conjunction, are not separated by a comma; but when there are more than two, or where the conjunction is understood, they are separated.

Simple members, connected by relatives or comparatives, are usually distinguished by a comma; but, when the members are short in comparative sentences, and when two members are closely connected by a relative, restraining the general notion of the antecedent to a particular sense, the pause becomes almost insensible, and the comma may be omitted.

"*Raptures, transports, and extasies are the rewards which they confer; sighs and tears, prayers and broken hearts, are the offerings which are paid to them.*" Addison.

"*Gods partial, changeful, passionate, unjust;*
Whose attributes were rage, revenge, and lust." Pope.

"*What is sweeter than honey? and what is stronger than a lion?*" Judges xiv. 18.

A circumstance of importance, though no more than an imperfect phrase, may be set off with a comma on each side, to give it force and distinction.*

3. The *semicolon*, or half member, requires a pause while the reader can distinctly pronounce *two* (one, one.) It marks a greater portion of a sentence than a comma, yet does not of itself make a *complete* sentence, but is followed by something closely depending on it; as, *virtue is the highest exercise and improvement of reason; the integrity, the harmony, and just balance of affection; the health, strength, and beauty of the mind.*

A semicolon is often used in a contrast; in distinguishing nouns of a contrary signification; and when several nouns, with their different epithets, equally relate to the same verb; as, *he was of a firm and undaunted resolution; of a steady and regular conduct; of a comely and winning deportment; of a sweet, facetious, and obliging temper.*

4. The

* With regard to the use of the comma, see Lowth's Introduction to English Grammar; article Punctuation.

4. The *colon*, or member, requires a pauſe, while the reader can pronounce *three* (one, one, one).

It marks the greateſt portion of a ſentence, and of itſelf would make a *complete* ſentence; yet ſo as to leave the mind in ſuſpenſe, and expectation of what is to follow; as, *if the enemy ſhould advance, and offer to paſs the river, I command you to give battle: if not, decamp, and march ſtraight to the city.*

As ſeveral ſemicolons, ſo ſeveral colons may be uſed in a long ſentence.

5. *A period* commonly requires a pauſe, while the reader can pronounce *four* (one, one, one, one).* It is uſed, when the ſentence is completely ended; as, *learning makes life ſweet; and procures pleaſure, tranquillity, glory, and praiſe.*

6. A point of interrogation is uſed, when a queſtion is propoſed; as, *will you never grow wiſe?*

7. A point of admiration or exclamation is uſed, when ſome ſudden paſſion is expreſſed; and when ſomething is admired, or exclaimed againſt; as, *O times! O manners!*†

8. A *parentheſis* includes ſome words in a ſentence, which are not neceſſary to complete the ſenſe; but ſerve for illuſtration.

9. *Brackets*

---

* The preciſe duration of each pauſe cannot be exactly defined. It varies according to the different ſubjects of diſcourſe, and the different exerciſes of human paſſion. The *ſemiperiod*, or leſs point, in Latin books marks the ſenſe of a colon. The following word beginning with a ſmall letter diſtinguiſhes it from a period.

† As to the time taken up in the pauſe, after a point of admiration; or a point of interrogation, although, in general, it ought to be as long as that of a period, yet its length muſt depend upon the nature of the queſtion, with regard to the latter, and the emotions or paſſions, marked by the former.

When a book is divided into ſections or paragraphs, a pauſe ſhould be made, at the end of each, as long as two periods, and ſometimes longer.

Both a point of *interrogation* and that of *admiration* or *exclamation* require an elevation of the voice, when the laſt word preceding, or one near the end of a ſentence, is emphatic; which is moſt uſually the caſe.

Both the *parentheſis* and *brackets* require a ſhort pauſe before and after them, uſually as long as a comma; but ſometimes longer, as the ſenſe may require: and the words included in them ſhould be read with a voice lower than the reſt of the ſentence.

9. *Brackets* or *crotchets* include words and sentences, inserted chiefly to explain something that is discoursed of; and sometimes they point out words which may be used, instead of those which are expressed in the sentence.

10. A blank line generally denotes, that some letters in a word, or words in a sentence, or sentences in a discourse, are left out, and is, therefore, frequently used in abridgments.

A blank line sometimes denotes, that the sentence or words, after which it is marked, are worthy of particular attention; and, sometimes, that the expression is abrupt through vehemence of passion: then it frequently requires a pause as long as a period.*

11. The *marks* and *notes* used in books are, the Apostrophe (') ; Asterisk (*) ; Hyphen (-) ; Diæresis (¨) ; Caret (^) ; Quotation (" ") ; Brace (}) ; Paragraph (¶) ; Section (§) ; References (* † ‡ ‖ § ¶) ; Index (☞) ; Accent (') ; Long mark (–) ; Short mark (˘).

12. An *apostrophe* is the mark of a letter left out; as, *us'd* for used ; *lov'd* for loved ; *tun' babes ?* for tune babes ?

13. *Asterisks* set together show there is something wanting, or immodest, in the author.

14. A *hyphen* joins two words together ; as, *foot-stool.* It also connects a word, when part of it is written at the end of a line, and part, for want of room, is carried to the beginning of the next line. In this case, the word must be divided, as it is properly spelt ; that is, the last syllable put in the first line must be complete, and the whole of the following carried to the next line.

15. A *diæresis* is placed over two vowels, which would otherwise make a diphthong, and parts them into two syllables ; as, *idëa, Phäeton.*

16. A *caret* is used, when a letter, syllable, word, or clause of a sentence, happens, by inadvertence, to be left out in

* A blank line, supplying the place of letters left out of a word, is by some called *ellipsis.* It must, in such case, be as long as the room the letters left out would occupy, and no longer, whether it is continued, or broken into the number of letters omitted. A blank line almost always requires a pause. The sense must direct respecting its length.

in *writing* (it is not used in printing;) and it must be put under the interlineation, in the place where it ought to *are* stand, when read; as, *William and George good boys.*

17. A *quotation* signifies that an author is quoted in his own words.

18. *Braces* are used to couple two or more words together, which have some relation to one another. They also connect three lines in poetry, which end with the same rhyme.

19. A *paragraph* is placed at the beginning of a new subject or discourse; and is chiefly used in the bible.

20. A *section* divides a discourse or chapter into less heads or portions. It is also used as a reference.

21. References point to something worthy of attention in the margin, or at the bottom of the page.*

22. An *index* points out to something remarkable.

23. An *accent* placed over a vowel, or after a syllable, shows that the stress of the voice, in pronouncing, is on that syllable; as, *fin'ish, in'dustry.*

24. A *long mark* shows, that the syllable, over which it is placed, is long; as, *fōlio, Orīon, cupīdo.*

25. A *short mark* shows, that the syllable, over which it is placed, is short; as, *clăssĭc, nĭhĭlum.*

N. B. A long syllable may be marked with a circumflex accent, thus; *amâre, musâ* in the *abl. sing.*

---

* Letters of the alphabet and figures are sometimes used as references.

Letters of the alphabet and

PART

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION I.

Of the Parts of Speech; of Nouns, their Diviſion, Numbers, Genders, Caſes.

1. THERE are eight parts of ſpeech in Latin; viz. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; *declined*: Adverb, Conjunction, Prepoſition, and Interjection; *undeclined*.*

2. A noun

* There is no abſolute neceſſity of dividing ſpeech into *eight parts*; for, as all diſcourſe muſt be about things, their properties, actions, or relations, were it not for cuſtom, it might be divided into *four*, viz. *noun, adnoun* or *attribute, verb*, and *particle*.

Some of the ancients ſuppoſed, that all words may be divided into three kinds; 1. ſuch as mark the names of things; 2. ſuch as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. ſuch as are ſignificant only in conjunction with other words. Theſe ſeveral kinds may be called *ſubſtantives, attributives*, and *connectives*.

Of this opinion, concerning the diviſion of all words into three kinds, were Ariſtotle and Theodectes. Quintil. Inſt. Orat. Lib. I. Cap. IV.

Thoſe words or parts of ſpeech are ſaid to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *termination* of words.

The Engliſh language has one part of ſpeech more than the Latin, namely, the *Article*, which is a word put before ſubſtantive nouns, to point them out, and to ſhow how far their ſignification extends.

In Engliſh, there are two articles, *a* and *the*. *A* becomes *an* before a vowel when ſounded, or a ſilent *h*.

A is

2. A noun is either ſubſtantive or adjective.*

3. A ſubſtantive is the name of any perſon, place, or thing;† as, puer, *a boy*; hŭmus, *the ground*; lĭber, *a book*.

4. An adjective is a word *added* to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality; as bŏnus, *good*; fēlix, *happy*.‡

5. Latin

A is called the *indefinite*, *the*, the *definite* article. *A* is uſed to point out one ſingle thing of a kind, without fixing preciſely what that thing is; *the* determines what particular thing is meant.

The placed before certain common names, may mark either a whole kind, or ſome individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the man*, *the ox*.

A can only be joined to ſubſtantive nouns in the ſingular number; *the* may alſo be joined to plurals.

A is uſed before adjectives, which expreſs number, when many are conſidered as one whole; as, *a thouſand men*. *The* may be applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or ſuperlative degree, to mark their ſignification more ſtrongly; as, *the wiſer*, *the better*. Thus, we may ſay, *the more I think of it*, *the better I like it*.

* As the ſubſtantive and adjective together expreſs but one object, and in Latin are declined after the ſame manner, they are both comprehended under the ſame general name.

† Subſtantives are of two ſorts; *proper* and *common* names. *Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of perſons and places; ſuch are *John*, *London*. *Common names* ſtand for whole kinds, containing ſeveral ſorts; or for ſorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal*, *man*, *beaſt*, *fiſh*, *horſe*.

It is impoſſible that every particular being ſhould have an appropriate name, as beings or things are innumerable: men have, therefore, been obliged to give the ſame common name to ſuch things as agree together in certain reſpects. Theſe form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *ſpecies*, or ſort.

A proper name may be uſed for a common, and then in Engliſh it has an article; as, when we ſay of ſome great conqueror, he is *an* Alexander; or, *the* Alexander of his age.

‡ A ſubſtantive may be diſtinguiſhed from an adjective, if we conſider that a ſubſtantive can ſtand in a ſentence ſo as to make good ſenſe, without an adjective, but that an adjective cannot, without a ſubſtantive; thus we may ſay, *a man* walks; but we cannot ſay, *great* or *good* walks: or thus, if the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make ſenſe; but, if it be joined to a ſubſtantive, it will make nonſenſe; thus we can ſay, *a good thing*; but we cannot ſay, a *book* or *houſe thing*.

5. Latin ſubſtantives are declined by *Genders*, *Caſes*, and *Numbers*.

6. There are three genders, *maſculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.*

7. The caſes are ſix, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accuſative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*.†

8. There are two numbers, *ſingular* and *plural*.‡

9. There are five declenſions of Latin nouns, which may be diſtinguiſhed from one another, by the termination of the genitive caſe ſingular; thus, the genitive ſingular of the firſt declenſion ends in *æ*, of the ſecond in *i*, the third in *is*, the fourth in *us*, and the fifth in *ei*.

SECTION

---

* Such nouns as are applied to ſignify either the male or the female, are ſaid to be of the *common gender*; that is, either maſculine or feminine.

When it is not eaſy to determine of what gender a word is, in ſome particular connexion, it is ſaid to be of the *doubtful gender*.

† Caſes are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to expreſs the relation of one thing to another. They are ſo called from *cădo*, to fall; becauſe they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is, therefore, named *cāſus rectus*, the ſtraight caſe; and the other caſes, *cāſus oblīqui*, the oblique caſes.

Although Latin nouns are ſaid to have ſix caſes, yet they never have that number of different terminations, both in the ſingular and plural.

The following are the Engliſh ſigns of the ſix caſes of Latin nouns; *a* or *an* and *the* of the nominative and accuſative; *of* before, or an *apoſtrophe* with *s* at the end of its Engliſh, of the genitive; *to* and *for* of the dative; *O* of the vocative; and *with*, *in*, *by*, of the ablative.

‡ As, ſingular, Lapis, *a ſtone*; plural, lapides, *ſtones*.

SECTION II.

Examples of the five declensions.

1. NOUNS of the *first* declension are commonly of the feminine gender*: they are thus declined:†

Mūsa, *a song*, fem.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Mūsa, ‡*a song;*	Mūsæ, *songs;*
G.	Mūsæ,‖ *of a song;*	Mūsārum, *of songs;*
D.	Mūsæ, *to a song;*	Mūsis, *to songs;*
Ac.	Mūsam, *a song;*	Mūsas, *songs;*
V.	Mūsa, *O song;*	Mūsæ, *O songs.*
Ab.	Mūsâ, *with a song.*	Mūsis, *with songs.*

2. Nouns of the second declension are usually either of the masculine, or of the neuter gender.§ Those which end in *r*¶ are thus declined:

Gĕner, *a son in law*, masc.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Gĕner,	Gĕnĕri,
G.	Gĕnĕri,	Gĕnĕrōrum,
D.	Gĕnĕro,	Gĕnĕris,
Ac.	Gĕnĕrum,	Gĕnĕrōs,
V.	Gĕner,	Gĕnĕri,
Ab.	Gĕnĕro.	Gĕnĕris.

Masculine

---

* A few nouns of the first declension are masculine.

† The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension; *fīlia, nāta, dea, dŏmĭna, sŏcia, fămŭla, serva, ănĭma, ĕqua, mūla, ăsĭna, līberta*, and *conserva.*

‡ Or, *the* song.

‖ The genitive case singular of this declension sometimes ends in *āi*, or *as*. N. B. Nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as*, or *es*.

§ Some nouns of the second declension are of the feminine gender.

¶ Many nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive, and the other oblique cases; as, Nom. *ager*, Gen. *agri*, &c.

Maſculine and feminine nouns of the ſecond declenſion in *us* are thus declined:

Dŏmĭnus, *a lord*, maſc.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Dŏmĭnus,	*N.*	Dŏmĭni,
G.	Dŏmĭni,	*G.*	Dŏmĭnōrum,
D.	Dŏmĭno,	*D.*	Dŏmĭnis,
Ac.	Dŏmĭnum,	*Ac.*	Dŏmĭnōs,
V.	Dŏmĭne,*	*V.*	Dŏmĭni,
Ab.	Dŏmĭno.	*Ab.*	Dŏmĭnis.

Neuters of the ſecond declenſion are thus declined:

Bellum, *war*, neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Bellum,	*N.*	Bella,
G.	Belli,	*G.*	Bellōrum,
D.	Bello,	*D.*	Bellis,
Ac.	Bellum,	*Ac.*	Bella,
V.	Bellum,	*V.*	Bella,
Ab.	Bello.	*Ab.*	Bellis.

3. Nouns of the third declenſion are of all genders.† Such as are maſculine or feminine are thus declined:

Lăpis, *a ſtone*, maſc.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Lăpis,	*N.*	Lăpĭdes,
G.	Lăpĭdis,	*G.*	Lăpĭdum,
D.	Lăpĭdi,	*D.*	Lăpĭdĭbus,
Ac.	Lăpĭdem,‡	*Ac.*	Lăpĭdes,
V.	Lăpis,	*V.*	Lăpĭdes,
Ab.	Lăpĭde.	*Ab.*	Lăpĭdĭbus.

Nubes,

---

* *Pŏpŭlus, vulgus, agnus, lūcus, chŏrus, flŭvius*, and *Bacchus* make their vocative ſingular in *e* or *us*. Proper names in *ius*, with filius and genius, loſe *us* in the vocative. Deus has vocat. Deus.

N. B. Nouns of the ſecond declenſion end in *er, ir, ur, us, um, os*, and *on*.

† There are more nouns of the third declenſion than of all the other declenſions. Its final letters are thirteen; *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*.

‡ Proper names in *is* of the third declenſion, excepting commonly thoſe

Nubes, *a cloud*, fem.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Nūbes,	*N.*	Nūbes,
G.	Nūbis,	*G.*	Nūbium,*
D.	Nūbi,	*D.*	Nūbĭbus,
Ac.	Nūbem,	*Ac.*	Nūbes,
V.	Nūbes,	*V.*	Nūbes,
Ab.	Nūbe.	*Ab.*	Nūbĭbus.

Neuters of the third declenſion are thus declined:

Căpŭt, *a head*, neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Căpŭt,	*N.*	Căpĭta,
G.	Căpĭtis,	*G.*	Căpĭtum,
D.	Căpĭti,	*D.*	Căpĭtĭbus,
Ac.	Căput,	*Ac.*	Căpĭta,
V.	Căput,	*V.*	Căpĭta,
Ab.	Căpĭte.	*Ab.*	Căpĭtĭbus.

Sēdīle,

---

thoſe of men and women, have *im* or *in* in the accuſative ſingular. The following nouns make the accuſative *im*, and the ablative *i*, namely, *vis, sĭtis, rāvis, tuſſis, cannăbis, cŭcŭmis, sĭnāpis, ămuſſis*. Some have *em* or *im* in the accuſative, and *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *clāvis, cŭtis, fabris, meſſis, nāvis, puppis*, &c. *Cŭcŭmis* has frequently acc. *cŭcŭmin*.

The names of months make their ablative in *i*; and ſome others, which form their accuſative ſingular by *em*, have their ablative frequently in *i*; as, *amnis, ignis, imber, collis, claſſis, orbis*, &c.

* When the genitive plural ends in *ium*, the nominative, accuſative, and vocative plural ſometimes have *eis*, or *is*, inſtead of *es*; as, omn*eis* part*eis*, or omn*is* part*is*, for omnes partes.

All nouns which have *i* in the ablative ſingular, nouns of two ſyllables, not increaſing in the genitive, and thoſe which end in two conſonants, form the genitive plural in *ium*, like nubes. To theſe are added, *cor, dos, glis, os, lar, lar, nox, vas, mas, mus, fal, lis, as, nix*. But *păreus, păter, māter, frāter, cānis, pānis, hyems, vātes*, have their gen. plur. in *um*.

Sēdīle, *a ſeat*, neut.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Sēdīle,*	Sēdīlia,
G.	Sēdīlis,	Sēdīlium,
D.	Sēdīli,	Sēdīlibus,
Ac.	Sēdīle,	Sēdīlia,
V.	Sēdīle,	Sēdīlia,
Ab.	Sēdīli.	Sēdīlibus.

Iter, *a journey*, neut.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Iter,	Itĭnĕra,
G.	Itĭnĕris,	Itĭnĕrum,
D.	Itĭnĕri,	Itĭnĕrĭbus,
Ac.	Iter,	Itĭnĕra,
V.	Iter,	Itĭnĕra,
Ab.	Itĭnĕre.	Itĭnĕrĭbus.

4. Nouns of the fourth declenſion are of all genders; but they are moſt uſually of the maſculine or neuter. Such as are maſculine or feminine end in *us*; ſuch as are neuter, in *u*. They are thus declined:

Grădus, *a ſtep*, maſc.

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	Grădus,	Grădus,
G.	Grădus,†	Grăduum,‡
D.	Grădui,†	Grădĭbus,‖
Ac.	Grădum,	Grădus,
V.	Grădus,	Grădus,
Ab.	Grădu.	Grădĭbus.‖

Cornu,

---

* Neuters ending in *al* and *ar* are declined like sēdīle. Nouns of the third declenſion, ending in *a*, have their dative and ablative plural, frequently, in *ātis*; as, pŏēma, gen. pŏēmătis; dative and ablative plural, pŏēmătis, for *pŏēmătĭbus*.

Proper names in *e*, and *far*, *hĕpar*, *jŭbar*, *gausăpe*, *nectar*, *lăquear*, make their ablative ſingular in *e*.

† The genitive caſe ſingular of the fourth declenſion ſometimes, but rarely, ends in *ui*, and the dative in *u*.

‡ The genitive caſe plural of the four firſt declenſions is ſometimes contracted by a ſyncope; as, *cœlicolûm*, for cœlicolarum; *deûm*, for deorum.

‖ Some words of the fourth declenſion have their dative and ablative plural in *ubus*; as, *ăcus*, *arcus*, *artus*, *lăcus*, *partus*, *quercus*, *ſpĕcus*, *trĭbus*; alſo, *fĭcus*, *gĕnu*, and *vĕru*. N. B. *Artus*, *gĕnu*, *portus*, *quæſtus*, and *vĕru*, have *ŭbus* or *ĭbus*.

Cornu, *a horn*, neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Cornu,	*N.*	Cornua,
G.	Cornu,	*G.*	Cornuum,
D.	Cornu,	*D.*	Cornĭbus,
Ac.	Cornu,	*Ac.*	Cornua,
V.	Cornu,	*V.*	Cornua,
Ab.	Cornu.	*Ab.*	Cornĭbus.

5. Nouns of the fifth declenſion end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.* They are thus declined:

Făcies, *a face*, fem.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Făcies,	*N.*	Făcies,
G.	Făciēi,†	*G.*	Făciērum,
D.	Făciēi,	*D.*	Făciēbus,
Ac.	Făciem,	*Ac.*	Făcies,
V.	Făcies,	*V.*	Făcies,
Ab.	Făcie.	*Ab.*	Făciēbus.

SECTION

* Except dies, *a day*, which is maſculine or feminine in the ſingular, and always maſculine in the plural; and meridies, the *mid-day*, or *noon*, which is alſo maſculine.

† This genitive ſometimes ends in *ii*, *es*, or *e*.

Moſt nouns of the fifth declenſion want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural; and many, the plural altogether.

SECTION III.

Of Irregular and Greek Nouns.

1. When a noun is compounded with another noun, if they are both in the nominative, they are both declined: as,

	Sing.		*Plur.*
N.	Reſpŭblĭca, *a commonwealth.*	*N.*	Reſpublicæ,
G.	Reipublicæ,	*G.*	Rerumpublicārum,
D.	Reipublicæ,	*D.*	Rebuſpublicis,
Ac.	Rempublicam,	*Ac.*	Reſpublicas,
V.	Reſpublica,	*V.*	Reſpublicæ,
Ab.	Republica.	*Ab.*	Rebuſpublicis.*

2. If a nominative is compounded with an oblique caſe,† then the nominative only is declined: as,

	Sing.	
N.	Păterfămĭlias,‡	*a maſter of a family.*
G.	Pătrisfămĭlias,	
D.	Pătrĭfămĭlias,	
Ac.	Pătremfămĭlias,	
V.	Păterfămĭlias,	
Ab.	Pătrefămĭlias.	

3. Dŏmus is partly of the ſecond and partly of the fourth declenſion, and thus declined:

	Sing.		*Plur.*
N.	Dŏmus, *a houſe.*	*N.*	Dŏmus,
G.	Dŏmus, or -mi,	*G.*	Dŏmōrum, or -uum,
D.	Dŏmui, or -mo,	*D.*	Dŏmĭbus,
Ac.	Dŏmum,	*Ac.*	Dŏmōs, or -us,
V.	Dŏmus,	*V.*	Dŏmus,
Ab.	Dŏmo.	*Ab.*	Dŏmĭbus.

4. Deus

* Reſpublica is compounded of *res* of the fifth declenſion, and *publica* of the firſt.

† All caſes differing in termination from the nominative ſingular, are called oblique. See Sec. I. No. 7. Note.†

‡ Familias, in paterfamilias, is, by an archaiſm, uſed for familiæ. Part III. Sec. X. No. 20. See alſo Sec. II. (of this II. Part) No. 1. Note.‡

4. Deus is irregular in ſome caſes, and thus declined:

	Sing.		*Plur.*
N.	Deus, *God.*	*N.*	Dii,
G.	Dei,	*G.*	Deorum,
D.	Deo,	*D.*	Diis, or Deis,
Ac.	Deum,	*Ac.*	Deos,
V.	Deus,	*V.*	Dii,
Ab.	Deo.	*Ab.*	Diis, or Deis.*

5. Greek

---

* Nouns wanting the ſingular or plural are, in that reſpect, rather defective than irregular. Some are never uſed in the ſingular; as, the names of *feaſts*, *games*, and *ſome cities*, &c. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they expreſs. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, and many abſtract nouns. The irregularities of nouns reſpect their caſes, declenſions, and genders. There are many nouns called *aptots*, which are not declined, but uſed for any caſe with the ſame termination, as the ſenſe and connexion require; as, fas, *right*; nĕfas, *wrong*; nil, nihil, *nothing*. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, velle ſuum, for *voluntas ſua*, his own inclination.

Some nouns are uſed only in one caſe, and, therefore, called *monoptots*; as, noctu, *in the night*; infĭcias, *denial*.

Some are uſed only in two caſes, called *diptots*; as, gen. ſpontis, *of choice*, abl. ſponte. Gen. plur. rĕpĕtundarum, *of extortion*, or *money unjuſtly taken in the time of one's office*, abl. rĕpĕtundis.

Triptots have three caſes only; as, gen. ŏpis, *of power*, ac. ŏpem, abl. ŏpe.

Some nouns want the nominative and vocative, and are called *tetraptots*; others want only one caſe, and are called *pentaptots*.

Some things have two or more names, differing a little in their terminations; as, arbor and arbos, *a tree*; vōmis and vōmer, *a plough-ſhare*.

Mœnia, *walls*, and moſt names of heathen feaſts, want the ſingular; but are declined in the plural, both like the ſecond and third declenſions; as, mœnia, gen. mœniorum and mœnium, &c.

Some nouns are of one gender in the ſingular, and of another gender in the plural; as, Pergămus *the citadel of Troy*, and supellex, *houſehold furniture*, are feminine in the ſingular, and neuter in the plural.

Raſtrum, *a harrow*, frænum, *a bridle*, filum, *a thread*, and căpiſtrum, *a halter*, are neuter in the ſingular, but both maſculine and neuter in the plural.

Cœlum, *heaven*, and Argos, *the name of a city*, with ſome other words, are neuter in the ſingular, and maſculine in the plural.

5. Greek nouns ending in *as*, *es*, or *e*, are of the first declension, and thus declined:*

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. Ænēas, *the name of a man.*	N. Anchīſes, *the name of a man.*
G. Ænēæ,	G. Anchiſæ,
D. Ænēæ,	D. Anchiſæ,
Ac. Ænēam, or -an,	Ac. Anchīſen, or -em,
V. Ænēa,	V. Anchīſe,
Ab. Ænēa.	Ab. Anchīſe.

Sing. Nom. Pēnĕlŏpe, *the name of a woman*, Gen. Pēnĕlŏpes, Dat. Pēnĕlŏpe, Ac. Pēnĕlŏpen, Voc. Pēnĕlŏpe, Ab. Pēnĕlŏpe.

6. Greek nouns ending in *os*, *on*, and *eus*, are of the second declension, and thus declined:

Sing.

N. Dēlos, *an island.*	N. Athos, *the name of a mountain.*	N. Īlion, *Troy.*
G. Dēli,	G. Atho,	G. Ilii,
D. Dēlo,	D. Atho,	D. Ilio,
Ac. Dēlum, or -on,	Ac. Athon, or -o,	Ac. Ilion,
V. Dēle,	V. Athos,	V. Ilion,
Ab. Dēlo.	Ab. Atho.	Ab. Ilio.

Sing. N. Orpheus, *the name of a man*, G. Orphei, -ii, or -eos, D. Orphii, -ei, or -eo, Ac. Orpheum, -on, or -a, V. Orpheu, Ab. Orpheo.†

7. Examples of the inflection of Greek nouns of the third declension.

Sing.

---

* Greek nouns sometimes end in *a*, and have *an* in the accusative singular in poetry; as, nom. Offa, *the name of a mountain*, gen. Offæ, dat. Offæ, ac. Offam, or -an, &c.

† Proper names want the plural, unleſs when ſeveral of the ſame ſort are ſpoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of muſa, if they are of the firſt declenſion, &c.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for Atrīdes; *Perſa*, for Perſes; *geometra*, for geometres; *Circa*, for Circe; *ĕpĭtŏma*, for ĕpĭtŏme; *grammătĭca*, for grammătice; *rhĕtŏrĭca*, for rhĕtŏrice.

Some neuters of the ſecond declenſion have the gen. plural in *ŏn*, as, nom. plur. Georgĭca, *Georgicks*, gen. Georgicŏn.

Sing. N. Lampas, *a lamp*; G. lampădis, or -ădos; D. lampădi; Ac. lampădem, or -ăda; V. lampas; Ab. lampăde.

Plur. N. Lampădes; G. lampădum; D. lampădĭbus; Ac. lampădes, or -ădas; V. lampădes; Ab. lampădĭbus.

Sing. N. Troas; Troădis, or -ădos; ădi; ădem, or -ăda; as; ăde.

Plur. N. Troădes; um; ĭbus, or -sĭ; es, or -as; es; ibus.

Sing. N. Tros; Trois; Troi; Troem, or -a; Tros; Troe.

Sing. Phillis; Phillĭdis, or -dos; di; dem, or -da; i, or -is; de.

Sing. Păris; Părĭdis, or -dos; di; dem, Părim or -in; i; de.

Sing. Chlămўs; Chlămўdis, or -ўdos; ўdi; ўdem or ўda; ys; ўde, &c.

Sing. Capўs; Capўis, or -yos; yi; ym or yn; y; ye or y.

Sing. Mĕtămorphōsis; ios or -eos; i; em or -in; i; i.*

SECTION IV.

Adjectives.

1. AN adjective is a word *added* to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality.†

2. Adjectives

---

* *Sing.* N. Jeſus; G. u; D. u; Acc. um; V. u; Ab. u.

Sing. N. Dido; G. us; D. o; Acc. o; V. o; Abl. o.

Greek feminines in *o* are frequently declined after the manner of the Latins; as, N. Dido, G. Didonis, D. Didoni, &c.

N. B. Theſe laſt Greek examples may be referred to the fourth declenſion.

† Some adjectives have three terminations; the firſt in *us*, or *er* of the maſculine gender, declined like dŏmĭnus and gĕner; the ſecond in *a* of the feminine gender, declined like mūſa; and the third termination in *um* of the neuter gender, declined like bellum.

2. Adjectives of three terminations are thus declined;

	Sing.				*Plur.*			
N.	Bŏn-us,	ă,	um,	*good.*	*N.* Bŏn-i,	æ,	ă,	
G.	Bŏn-i,	æ,	i,		*G.* Bŏn-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,	
D.	Bŏn-o,	œ,	o,		*D.* Bŏn-is,	is,	is,	
Ac.	Bŏn-um,	am,	um,		*Ac.* Bŏn-ōs,	ās,	ă,	
V.	Bŏn-e,	ă,	um,		*V.* Bŏn-i,	æ,	ă,	
Ab.	Bŏn-o,	ā,	o.		*Ab.* Bŏn-is,	is,	is.*	

	Sing.				*Plur.*			
N.	Tĕn-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	*tender.*	*N.* Tĕn-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕră,	
G.	Tĕn-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕri,		*G.* Tĕn-ĕrōrum,	-ĕrārum,	-ĕrōrum,	
D.	Tĕn-ĕro,	-ĕræ,	-ĕro,		*D.* Tĕn-ĕris,	-ĕris,	-ĕris,	
Ac.	Tĕn-ĕrum,	-ĕram,	-ĕrum,		*Ac.* Tĕn-ĕrōs,	-ĕrās,	-ĕră,	
V.	Tĕn-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,		*V.* Tĕn-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕră,	
Ab.	Tĕn-ĕro,	-ĕra,	-ĕro.		*Ab.* Tĕn-ĕris,	-ĕris,	-ĕris,	

3. Some adjectives of three terminations have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*: they are thus declined:

	Sing.				*Plur.*			
N.	Un-us,	ă,	um,	*one.*	*N.* Ūn-i,	æ,	ă,	
G.	Un-ius,	ius,	ius,		*G.* Un-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,	
D.	Un-i,	i,	i,		*D.* Un-is,	is,	is,	
Ac.	Un-um,	am,	um,		*Ac.* Un-ōs,	ās,	ă,	
V.	Un-e,	ă,	um,		*V.* Un-i	æ,	ă,	
Ab.	Un-o,	ā,	o.		*Ab.* Un-is,	is,	is.†	

4. Ambo, *both*, duo, *two*, and tres, *three*, want the singular number, and are thus declined in the plural:

Plur.

---

* In like manner are declined *alius, acerbus, benignus, certus, carus, celsus, honestus, purus, tantus, vivus*, &c. Many adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, ater, atra, atrum; niger, nigra, nigrum.

† The following adjectives are declined like ūnus; *ălius, alter, neuter, nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus, ŭter, ŭterlĭbet, ŭterque*, and *altĕrŭter*. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular, in the neuter gender; and alīus, not aliius, in the genitive singular. *Alius, alter, neuter, nullus, ullus, ŭter* and its compounds, have no vocative. Unus is said not to be used in the plural number, unless when joined with a noun which has no singular, or when several particulars are considered as one whole. We find, however, exceptions to this rule; as, Satis una superque vidimus excidia. Virg. Unos sex dies. Plautus.

	Plur.			*Plur.*	
N. Duo,	duæ,	duo,	*N.* Tres,		Tria,
G. Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	*G.* Trium,		
D. Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*D.* Tribus,		
Ac. Duōs or duo,	duās,	duo,	*Ac.* Tres,		Tria,
V. Duo,	duæ,	duo,	*V.* Tres,		Tria,
Ab. Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	*Ab.* Tribus.		

In the same manner decline Ambo, æ, o.

5. Adjectives in *is** are of two endings; the first is masculine and feminine, the second is neuter.† They are thus declined:‡

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Mītis, mīte, *mild.*	*N.* Mītes, mītia,
G. Mītis,	*G.* Mītium,
D. Mīti,	*D.* Mītibus,
Ac. Mītem, mīte,	*Ac.* Mītes, mītia,
V. Mītis, mīte,	*V.* Mītes, mītia,
Ab. Mīti.	*Ab.* Mītibus.

6. Adjectives of one ending are of all genders, and thus declined:

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Fēlix, *happy.*	*N.* Fēlices, felīcia,
G. Fēlīcis,	*G.* Fēlīcium,
D. Fēlīci,	*D.* Fēlicibus,
Ac. Fēlicem, fēlix,	*Ac.* Fēlices, felīcia,
V. Fēlix,	*V.* Fēlices, felīcia,
Ab. Fēlīci, or felīce.‖	*Ab.* Fēlicibus.

7. The

* There are some adjectives in *is*, which have also *er*, declined like mītis, except in the nominative and vocative singular, which, in those cases, end thus; Nom. and Vocat. ācris or ācer, ācre; Gen. ācris; Dat. ācri, &c.

† In those cases, which have one ending only, they are of all genders.

‡ Adjectives both of two terminations and of one termination are declined like nouns of the third declension.

‖ When adjectives of one termination in the nominative case singular, in which case the terminations or endings of all adjectives are reckoned

7. The comparison of adjectives expresses their quality in different degrees; as, *hard, harder, hardest.**

8. There are reckoned three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.†

9. The comparative degree is formed from the first case of its positive ending in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: the superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *simus*; as, altus, *high*, Gen. sing. alti, &c. comparative altior, altius; superlative altissimus, a, um. So mītis, e; Gen. mītis, Dat. mīti; mītior, ius; mītissimus, a, um.

10. When the positive ends in *er*, the comparative is regular; but the superlative is formed by adding rimus to the positive; as, pulcher, pulchrior, pulcherrimus.‡

11. Some adjectives are very irregularly compared; as,

Bŏnus,

---

reckoned, have two in any other case, the first is mas. and fem. and the second neut. excepting, in the ablative singular, both *i* and *e* are of all genders, although the termination *i* is most usually neuter.

* Those adjectives only are compared, the signification of which admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

† The positive seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality of its substantive, and serves only as a foundation for the comparative and superlative degrees.

‡ These adjectives *făcĭlis, grăcĭlis, hŭmĭlis, imbĕcillis, sĭmĭlis*, also *ăgĭlis* and *dŏcĭlis*, are regular in the comparative; but form their superlative, by changing *is* into *limus*; as, făcĭlis, făcĭlior, făcillĭmus. All other adjectives in *lis* are regularly compared. Adjectives derived from *dico, facio, loquor*, and *volo*, form their comparative, by changing *us* into *entior*, and the superlative, by changing it into *entissimus*; as, mălĕdĭcus, mălĕdĭcentior, mălĕdĭcentissĭmus.

Bŏnus,	mĕlĭor,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*beſt.*
Mălus,	pĕjor,	peſsĭmus,	*bad,*	*worſe,*	*worſt.*
Magnus,	mājor,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greateſt.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus,	*ſmall,*	*leſs,*	*leaſt.*
Multus,	plus,*	plūrĭmus,	*much,*	*more,*	*moſt.*
Vĕtus,	vĕtĕrior,	vĕterrĭmus,	*old,*	*older,*	*oldeſt.*
Sŭpĕrus,	sŭpĕrior,	sŭprēmus, or ſummus,	*high,*	*higher,*	*higheſt.*
Infĕrus,	infĕrior,	infĭmus, or īmus,	*below,*	*lower,*	*loweſt.*
Poſtĕrus,	poſtĕrior,	poſtrēmus, or poſthŭmus,	*next,*	*later,*	*laſt.*
Nēquam, (aptot)	nēquior,	nēquiſsĭmus,	*bad,*	*worſe,*	*worſt.*
Extĕrus,†	extĕrior,	extrēmus, or extĭmus,	*outward,*	*more outward,*	*outermoſt* or *laſt.*

12. Adjectives

---

* Plus is only uſed in the neuter, in the ſingular number; but, in the plural, it has all genders.

† Some adjectives in the comparative and ſuperlative degrees ſeem to be formed from adverbs, or prepoſitions; as,

Citra or cis,	cĭtĕrior,	cĭtiſsĭmus,	*on this ſide,*	*nigher,*	*next.*
Ultra,	ultĕrior,	ultĭmus,	*beyond,*	*farther,*	*fartheſt.*
Prīdem,	prior,	prīmus,	*lately,*	*former,*	*firſt.*
Intra,	intĕrior,	intĭmus,	*within,*	*more inward,*	*moſt inward.*
Prope,	prōpior,	proxĭmus,	*near,*	*nearer,*	*neareſt.*
Diu,	diūtior,	diūtiſsĭmus,	*long,*	*longer,*	*longeſt.*

When an adjective ends in *us* pure, the comparative is uſually made by *magis*; as, arduus, *high*; comparative, magis arduus; and the ſuperlative is formed by *maximè, valdè, admodum, apprimè,* &c. as, valdè arduus. N. B. Syllables are ſaid to be *pure*, when they immediately follow vowels or diphthongs; and *impure*, when they immediately follow conſonants.

Many other adjectives, beſides thoſe which end in *us* pure, form their degrees of compariſon, like *arduus.*

Adjectives compounded with *per* and *pre* uſually have the force of the ſuperlative; as, permagnus, *very great*; prægrăvis, *very heavy.*

Many adjectives are defective in compariſon. Some, beſides thoſe ending in *us* pure, are never compared, unleſs by magis, &c. as, *veneficŏlor, peſtifer*; alſo ſuch as end in *inus, ivus, orus*, or *imus*, and *diminutives.*

Some want the poſitive; as, dĕtĕrior, dĕterrĭmus.

Some want the comparative; as, inclȳtus,—inclȳtiſsĭmus.

Others want the ſuperlative; as, ădŏlеſcens, ădŏlеſcentior.

Such

12. Adjectives of the comparative degree are thus declined:

	Sing.		*Plur.*
N.	Mītior, mītius, *milder.*	*N.*	Mītiōres, mītiōra,
G.	Mītiōris,	*G.*	Mītiōrum,
D.	Mītiōri,	*D.*	Mītiōribus,
Ac.	Mītiōrem, mītius,	*Ac.*	Mītiōres, mītiōra,
V.	Mītior, mītius,	*V.*	Mītiōres, mītiōra,
Ab.	Mītiōre, i.	*Ab.*	Mītiōribus.

SECTION V.

The Pronoun.

1. A PRONOUN is a word which ſtands inſtead of a noun.*

2. The ſimple pronouns in Latin are eighteen, *ĕgo, tu, ſui; ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui, quis, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter; noſtras, veſtras, cujas.* Three of theſe are ſubſtantives, *ego, tu,* and *ſui;* the others are adjectives.

3. Ego, *I,* tu, *thou,* and ſui, *of himſelf,* &c. are thus declined:

Sing.

Such comparatives as the following occur not in claſſical authors; *aſſiduior, ſtrenuior;* nor do ſuperlatives of this ſort, *egregiiſſimus, ineptiſſimus, ipſiſſimus, piiſſimus, tuiſſimus.*

* A pronoun has perſon, number, caſe, and gender.

As the repetition of the ſame word is diſagreeable to the ear, and would render language too ſlow, when the ſame perſons or things are often mentioned, certain words are uſed to ſupply the place of ſubſtantives, which words are called pronouns, becauſe they ſtand *pro nominibus.*

I is ſaid to be of the firſt perſon; *thou,* of the ſecond; and *he, ſhe,* and *it,* together with all other words, of the third; and ſo in the plural number, *we, ye, they.* Hence, theſe are called perſonal pronouns.

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. Ego, *I*,	*N.* Nos, *we*,
G. Mei, *of me*,	*G.* Noſtrûm *or* noſtri, *of us*,
D. Mihi, *to me*,	*D.* Nōbis, *to us*,
Ac. Me, *me*,	*Ac.* Nos, *us*,
V. wanting,*	*V. wanting*,
Ab. Me, *with me*.	*Ab.* Nōbis, *with us*.

Sing.		*Plur.*
N. Tu, *thou*,		*N.* Vos, *you* or *ye*,
G. Tui, *of thee*,		*G.*† Veſtrûm or veſtri, *of you*,
D. Tibi, *to thee*,	or you,	*D.* Vōbis, *to you*,
Ac. Te, *thee*,		*Ac.* Vos, *you*,
V. wanting,		*V. wanting*,
Ab. Te, *with thee*.		*Ab.* Vōbis, *with you*.

Sing. and *Plur.*
N. wanting——
G. Sui,‡ *of himſelf, herſelf, itſelf; of him, her, it; themſelves.*
D. Sibi, *to himſelf, herſelf, itſelf; to him, her, it; themſelves.*
Ac. Se, *himſelf, herſelf, itſelf; him, her, it; themſelves.*
V. wanting——
Ab. Se, *with himſelf, herſelf, itſelf; with him, her, it; themſelves.*

4. *Ille* is thus declined:

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. Ille,	illă,	illud, *he, ſhe, it* or *that*.	*N.* Illi,	illæ,	illă,
G. Illius,	illius,	illius,	*G.* Illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D. Illi,	illi,	illi,	*D.* Illis,	illis,	illis,
Ac. Illum,	illam,	illud,	*Ac.* Illōs,	illās,	illă,
V. Ille,	illă,	illud,	*V.* Illi,	illæ,	illă,
Ab. Illo,	illā,	illo.	*Ab.* Illis,	illis,	illis.

5. *Ipſe*

* *Ego* wants the vocative, becauſe one cannot call upon himſelf, except as a ſecond perſon.

† The genitive plural of *ĕgo* was formerly *noſtrorum* and *noſtrarum*, and of *tu*, *veſtrorum* and *veſtrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *noſtrûm* or *noſtri*, and *veſtrûm* or *veſtri*. Noſtrûm and veſtrûm are commonly uſed after partitives, numerals, comparatives, and ſuperlatives; and noſtri and veſtri after other words.

‡ Sui may be rendered in Engliſh by *him*, *her*, *it*, *them*, where it is not uſed reciprocally, and where there is no particular emphaſis.

5. *Ipse* and *iste* are declined like *ille*, excepting that *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nominative, acc. and voc. sing. neut.

6. *Is, ea, id,* is thus declined:

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. Is,	eă,	id, *he, she, it; that.*		*N.* Ii,	eæ,	eă,
G. Ejus,	ejus,	ejus,		*G.* Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D. Ei,	ei,	ei,		*D.* iis *or* eis, &c.		
Ac. Eum,	eam,	id,		*Ac.* Eōs,	eās,	eă,
V. ———				*V.* ———		
Ab. Eo,	eā,	eo.		*Ab.* Iis *or* eis, &c.*		

7. *Qui, quæ, quod,* is thus declined:

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. Qui,	quæ,	quod, *who, which, that.*†		*N.* Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cujus,	cujus,	cujus,		*G.* quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. Cui,	cui,	cui,		*D.* Quĭbus *or* queis, &c.		
Ac. Quem,	quam,	quod,		*Ac.* Quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. ———				*V.* ———		
Ab. Quo,	quā,	quo.‡		*Ab.* Quĭbus *or* queis, &c.		

8. *Quis, quæ, quod* or *quid,* is thus declined:

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. Quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,	*who, which, what.*	*N.* Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. Cujus,	Cujus,	Cujus,		*G.* Quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. Cui,	cui,	cui,		*D.* Quĭbus *or* queis, &c.		
Ac. Quem,	quam,	quod *or* quid,		*Ac.* Quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. ———				*V.* ———		
Ab. Quo,	qua,	quo.		*Ab.* Quibus *or* queis, &c.		

9. *Hic*

---

* *Hic, ille, iste,* and *is,* express *he,* &c. with this difference, *hic* is nearest to the speaker; *iste* next; and *ille* farthest off: but *is* denotes a person absent.

Ille usually implies respect, and *iste* contempt; as, Alexander ille Magnus, *Alexander the Great.* Tarquinius iste superbus, *Tarquin the Proud.*

† *Who* and *whom* refer to persons; *which* refers to things; *that,* both to persons and things.

‡ Qui has frequently *qui* in the ablative; and, what is remarkable, in all genders and numbers. *Qui* is sometimes used for *quis;* and, instead of *cujus,* the genitive of *quis,* we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus, cuja, cujum,* sometimes used.

9. *Hic, hæc, hoc,* is thus declined:

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	Hic,	hæc,	hoc, *this.*	*N.*	Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	Hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	*G.*	Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
D.	Huic,	huic,	huic,	*D.*	His,	his,	his,
Ac.	Hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	*A.*	Hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V.	Hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*V.*	Hi,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab.	Hoc,	hac,	hoc.	*Ab.*	His,	his,	his.

10. The other pronous are adjective derivatives coming from *ego, tu,* and *sui. Meus,* my or mine; *tuus,* thy or thine; *suus,* his own,——her, its, or *their own,* are declined like *bŏn-us, a, um;* and *noſter,* our, and *veſter,* your, like *tener, a, um, e* in the laſt ſyllable being dropped. See Sect. iv. No. 2. Note*.

11. *Noſtras,* of our country; *veſtras,* of your country; *cujas,* of what or which country, are declined like *felix.* Meus has *mi, mea, meum,* and ſometimes *meus, mea, meum,* in the voc. ſing.*

SECTION VI.

Compound Pronouns.

1. PRONOUNS are often compounded, either with *nouns,* as *ejuſmŏdi* (ejus and mŏdi); or with other *pronouns,* as *iſtic*

* Simple pronouns, with regard to their ſignification, are divided into the following claſſes.

1. *Demonſtratives,* which point out any perſon or thing preſent, or as if preſent; as, *ego, tu, ſui, hic, iſte,* and ſometimes *ille, is, ipſe.*

2. *Relatives,* which refer to ſomething going before, called the antecedent; as, *ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is,* and eſpecially *qui.*

3. *Poſſeſſives,* which ſignify poſſeſſion; as, *meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter.*

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles,* which ſignify one's country; as, *noſtras, veſtras, cujas.*

5. *Interrogatives,* by which we aſk a queſtion; as, *quis? cujas?* When quis is not an interrogative, it is called an *indefinite.*

6. *Reciprocals,* which call back, or again repreſent the ſame object to the mind; as, *ſui* and *ſuus.*

iſtic (iſte and hic); or with *verbs*, as *quivis (qui*, and *vis* from *volo)*; or with *adverbs*, as quiſquam *(quis* & *quam)*; or with *conjunctions*, as ſiquis *(ſi* and *quis)*; or with the ſyllabic adjections, *met, te, pte, cine, piam, cunque*, &c.

2. Egŏmet, *I myſelf*, is compounded of *ego* and the ſyllabic adjection *met*, and thus declined:

Sing.		*Plur.*	
N.	Egŏmet, *I myſelf.*	*N.*	Noſmet,
G.	Meimet,	*G.*	Noſtrûmmet or noſtrimet,
D.	Mihimet,	*D.*	Nobiſmet,
Ac.	Memet,	*Ac.*	Noſmet,
*V.**	———	*V.*	———
Ab.	Memet.	*Ab.*	Nobiſmet.

3. Idem *(is* and *dem* ſyllabic*)* is thus declined:

Sing.			*Sing.*		
N.	Idem,	ĕădem, ĭdem, *the ſame.*	*N.*	Iidem,	eædem, ĕădem,
G.	Ejuſdem,	ejuſdem, ejuſdem,	*G.*	†Eōrundem,	eārundem, eōrundem,
D.	Eidem,	eidem, eidem,	*D.*	Iiſdem *or* eiſdem, &c.	
Ac.	Eundem,	eandem, †idem,	*Ac.*	Eoſdem,	eaſdem, ĕădem,
V.	Idem,	ĕădem, idem;	*V.*	Iidem,	eædem, ĕădem,
Ab.	Eōdem,	ĕădem, eōdem.	*Ab.*	Iisdem, or eiſdem, &c.	

4. *Iſtic* or *iſthic (is* and *hic)*, and *illic* (*ille* and *hic*) are thus declined:

Sing.				*Plur.*	
N.	Iſtĭc *or* iſthic,	æc,	oc *or* uc, the *ſelf ſame.*	*N.*	æc.‡
Ac.	Iſtunc *or* iſthunc,	anc,	oc *or* uc,	*Ac.*	
Ab.	Iſtoc *or* iſthoc,	ac,	oc.	*neut.*	

SECTION

* Voſſius obſerves, that all the pronouns, except *ego* and *ſui*, have the vocative; and that, becauſe ſome others are but ſeldom uſed by Latin authors in that caſe, they are ſaid by Grammarians to want it.

† Or eumdem, eamdem, eōrumdem, eārumdem, &c.

‡ *Egoipſe*, compounded of *ego* and *ipſe*, is declined in this manner: *Sing.* Nom. Egoipſe, Gen. meiipſius, Dat. mihiipſi, Ac. meipſum; and thus through all the caſes, in both numbers.

Sing. Nom. Tute, Gen. Tuite, &c.

Sometimes ipſe is put after *met*, when met is added to another pronoun; as, ĕgometipſe; noſmetipſos.

Of *ecce* and *is* is compounded, Ac. Sing. Eccum, eccam, *look there he,—ſhe is.* Ac. Plur, Eccos, eccas.

Of

SECTION VII.

The VERB.

The definition of a verb—the kinds of verbs—their voices—modes—tenses—numbers—persons—conjugations, &c.

1. A VERB is a word, which expresses what is affirmed of persons and things: or it is that part of speech, which signifies *to do*, *to be*, or *to suffer*.

2. Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes; *active*, *passive*, and *neuter*.

3. An active verb expresses an action, and supposes an agent that acts, and an object acted upon; as, amo te, *I love you*. Præceptor corrigit puerum, *the master corrects the boy*.

4. A passive verb expresses passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and that something is done or applied

---

Of *en* and *ille*, Ac. Sing. Ellum, ellam, *see there he,—she comes.* Ac. Plur. Ellos, ellas.

Quidam, *quædam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, commonly changes *m* before *dam*, into *n*; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*.

Sin. N. Quisquis, quicquid, Ac. quicquid, Ab. quoquo, quaqua, quoquo, *whoever*, *whatever*.

Of *mŏdus*, and *hic*, *iste*, *quis*, *qui*, *is*, *idem*, are compounded these genitive monoptots, hujusmŏdi, *of this sort*; istiusmŏdi, *of that sort*; cujusmŏdi, *of which sort*; ejusmŏdi, *of that sort*, &c. Sometimes the syllabic *ce* is inserted in the middle; as, hujusscĕmŏdi, ejusscĕmŏdi.

Cum, *with*, is joined to the end of these ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *quo*, *qui*, and *quibus*; as, mecum, secum. But, in the poets, we sometimes read cum quibus, &c.

The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put first, are declined after the manner of *quis*, *quæ*, *quod* or *quid*; Sing. N. Quisnam, quænam, quodnam or quidnam, G. cujusnam, D. cuinam; and so in the other cases.

The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter; as, Nom. Sing. Aliquis, aliqua, aliquod or aliquid: Thus are declined *ecquis*, *siquis*, *nequis*, and *numquis*. The three last are usually read separately; thus, *si quis*, *ne quis*, *num quis*.

plied to the nominative or subject* spoken of; as, ĕgo doceor, *I am taught.*

5. Neuter verbs are divided into three kinds, *substantive, proper,* and *improper.*

6. Neuter substantive verbs are such as simply signify *being*; as, sum, *I am*; existo, *I exist.*

7. Proper neuters express the state and condition of persons and things; as, dormio, *I sleep*; sto, *I stand.*

8. Improper neuters signify a sort of action, not as passing over to an object, but terminating in the subject, or nominative of the verb; as, curro, *I run*; ambŭlo, *I walk.*†

9. Some verbs in Latin, under the passive form, have an active or neuter signification.‡ Such are called *depōnents*; as, lŏquor, *I speak*; lætor, *I rejoice.*

10. There

---

* The nominative case to a verb, or whatever stands in its stead, is called by grammarians the subject of the verb; and the accusative case governed by an active verb, is called the object of the verb.

Active verbs are called *transitive*, because they signify an action, which passes from their *subject*, and terminates on their *object.*

A *passive* verb has commonly one of these signs; *am, is, are, art, was, wast, were, been, be,* before its English, which ends in *ed, n,* or *t*; as, *I am taught.*

† These are also called *intransitives.*

Neither proper nor improper neuters will make sense, by taking *it*, after their English; but transitives always will; as, *I bear it; I see it*: but I run *it* is nonsense, unless *it* refers to a word of near signification, or *run* in the sentence is active; as, *I run it*, i. e. *the race.*

A verb neuter has often the sign of a passive verb in English, but is never used in the passive voice in Latin, unless impersonally. See Sec. XII. No. 3. Note*.

‡ Some verbs, under the passive form, have both an active and passive signification, and may be called *common*; as, crimĭnor, *I accuse*; or, *I am accused.*

Proper deponents may be called active or neuter, according to their signification. Most deponents were anciently common verbs. They are called *deponent* verbs, because they have laid aside their passive sense.

Deponent and *common* verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner, as if they had the active voice; thus, lætor, lætari, lætatus, *to rejoice*; pŏtior, potīri, potītus sum, *to enjoy.*

Also those verbs, which, under the active form, signify passively, may be called passive deponents, because they have laid down their passive *ending*, but retain their passive signification; as, veneo, *I am sold*;

10. There are two voices; the *active* and the *passive*.†
11. There are four modes; the *indicative*, *imperative*, *subjunctive*, and *infinitive*.‡
12. The tenses are five; the *present*, the *preter-imperfect*, the *preter-perfect*, the *preter-pluperfect*, and the *future*.§
13. The numbers are two; the *singular* and the *plural*.‖
14. The

---

fold; vapŭlo, *I am beaten*. Some verbs are called active, which do not properly signify any action, but real passion; as, video, *I see*; audio, *I hear*. Such verbs, in the common way of conception, are supposed to be active, and, therefore, used to govern the accusative case.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed in such a manner as to be joined to a substantive noun, and thus partake of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amātus*, loved. But, when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *gerund*; as, *amandum*, loving; or a supine; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved, or to love.

† *Voice* expresses the particular circumstance in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon.

‡ *Modes* or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb. The *indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, amo, *I love*: or asks a question; as, an tu amas? *dost thou love?*

The imperative commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, ama, *love thou*.

The subjunctive is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, si me obsecret, redibo, *if he entreat me, I will return*. When the subjunctive mode implies *possibility*, *liberty*, or *power*, it has been called by some grammarians the *potential* mode.

§ Tenses express the time, when any thing is supposed to *be*, to *act*, or to *suffer*. Time is generally divided into three parts, the *present*, *past*, and *future*. Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, scribēbam, *I wrote*, or *was writing*.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, scripsi, *I have written*, or *I wrote*. When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, scripsĕram, *I had written*. Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished at some future time; as scribam, *I shall write*; or scripsĕro, *I shall have written*.

‖ *Number* marks how many we suppose to *be*, to *act*, or to *suffer*.

14. The persons are three; the *first*, *second*, and *third*.*

15. A *conjugation* is the method or form of declining verbs through the *modes*, *tenses*, and *persons*.

16. Verbs have four conjugations, which, in the active voice, are known by the infinitive present; thus, the first has *a* long,† the second has *e* long, the third has *e* short, and the fourth has *i* long, before *re* in the infinitive present; as, amāre, docēre, legĕre, audīre.

17. The principal parts of verbs, from which the rest are formed, are the *first person singular of the indicative mode present tense*, *the infinitive present*, *the first person singular of the preter-perfect indicative*, and *the first supine*. They are thus rehearsed, or (as we usually say) conjugated, in parsing:

First conjugation.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.
Second conjug.	Dŏcĕo,	dŏcēre,	dŏcui,	doctum.
Third conjug.	Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum.
Fourth conjug.	Audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum.

SECTION

* *Person* shews to whom or what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns; that is, certain terminations corresponding with the person and number of their nominatives.

† Except *do* and its compounds, which have *a* short; as, *dăre*, *circumdăre*; also *dăbam*, *circumdăbam*, *circumdăbo*, &c.

SECTION VIII.

Example of the declenſion of active and neuter verbs in O, *through the modes, tenſes, and perſons. Participles, gerunds, and ſupines.*

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Am-o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
I love,	**you love,*	*he loves ;*	*we love,*	*you* or *ye love,*	*they love.*
Doc-ĕo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
I teach,	*you teach,*	*he teaches ;*	*we teach,*	*you* or *ye teach,*	*they teach.*
Leg-o,	-is,	-it ;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
I read,	*you read,*	*he reads ;*	*we read,*	*you* or *ye read,*	*they read.*
Aud-ĭo,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
I hear,	*you hear,*	*he hears ;*	*we hear,*	*you* or *ye hear,*	*they hear.*

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
I loved,	**you loved,*	*he loved ;*	*we loved,*	*you loved,*	*they loved.*
Doc-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
I taught,	*you taught,*	*he taught ;*	*we taught,*	*you taught,*	*they taught.*
Leg-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
I read,	*you read,*	*he read ;*	*we read,*	*you read,*	*they read.*
Aud-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.
I heard,	*you heard,*	*he heard ;*	*we heard,*	*you heard,*	*they heard.*

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

I have loved.

Am-āvi,	-āviſti,	-āvit ;	-āvĭmus,	-āviſtis,	-āvērunt *or* -āvēre.
Doc-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit ;	-uĭmus,	-uiſtis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Leg-i,	-iſti,	-it ;	-ĭmus,	-iſtis,	-ērunt *or* ēre.
Aud-īvi,	-īviſti,	-īvit ;	-īvĭmus,	-īviſtis,	-īvērunt *or* -īvēre.

PRETER-

* In the ſecond perſon ſingular, in Engliſh, we commonly uſe the plural form, except in ſolemn diſcourſe: as, amas, *you love*, inſtead of *thou loveſt*; amabas, *you loved*, inſtead of *thou lovedſt*, &c.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
I had loved.					
Am-āvĕram,	-āvĕras,	-āvĕrat;	-āvĕrāmus,	-āvĕrātis,	-āvĕrant.
Doc-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uĕrāmus,	-uĕrātis,	-uĕrant.
Lĕg-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-ĕrāmus,	-ĕrātis,	-ĕrant.
Aud-īvĕram,	-īvĕras,	-īvĕrat;	-īvĕrāmus,	-īvĕrātis,	-īvĕrant.

FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall or will love.**					
Am-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
Doc-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
Leg-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Aud-ĭam,	-ĭes,	-ĭet;	-ĭēmus,	-ĭētis,	-ĭent.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Love thou, &c.				
Am-a *or* -āto,	-āto; †	-āte *or* -ātōte,	-anto.
Dŏc-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -ētōte,	-ento.
Lĕg-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -ĭtōte,	-unto.
Aud-i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -ītōte,	-iunto.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may love.					
Am-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Doc-ĕam,	-ĕas,	-ĕat;	-ĕāmus,	-ĕātis,	-ĕant.
Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
Aud-ĭam,	-ĭas,	-ĭat;	-ĭāmus,	-ĭātis,	-ĭant.

PRETER-

---

* *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But this must be understood of explicative sentences; for, when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse, for the most part, takes place: thus, I *shall* go; you *will* go; express event only: but, *will* you go? imports intention; and *shall* I go? refers to the will of another. But again, he *shall* go, and *shall* he go? both imply will, expressing or referring to a command.
Lowth's English Grammar.

† The imperative mode has no first person, because, when a man commands himself, he must address himself in the second person. What some call the first person plur. imperative, may be referred to the present subjunctive.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
I might, could, should, would, &c. love.					
Am-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
Doc-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
Leg-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕrēmus,	-ĕrētis,	-ĕrent.
Aud-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

I might or *may have loved.*					
Am-āvĕrim,	-āvĕris,	-āvĕrit;	-āvĕrĭmus,	-āvĕrĭtis,	-āvĕrint.
Doc-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uĕrĭmus,	-uĕrĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Lēg-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Aud-īvĕrim,	-īvĕris,	-īvĕrit;	-īvĕrĭmus,	-īvĕrĭtis,	-īvĕrint.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might, could, would, or *should have,* or *had loved,*					
Am-āvissem,	-āvisses,	-āvisset;	-āvissēmus,	-āvissētis,	-āvissent.
Doc-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
Lēg-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Aud-īvissem,	-īvisses,	-īvisset;	-īvissēmus,	-īvissētis,	-īvissent.

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall or *will have loved.*					
Am-āvĕro,	-āvĕris,	-āvĕrit;	-āvĕrĭmus,	-āvĕrĭtis,	-āvĕrint.
Doc-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uĕrĭmus,	-uĕrĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Leg-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Aud-īvĕro,	-īvĕris,	-īvĕrit;	-īvĕrĭmus,	-īvĕrĭtis,	-īvĕrint.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT AND PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Amāre,	*to love.*	Legĕre,	*to read.*
Docēre,	*to teach.*	Audīre,	*to hear.*

PRETER-PERFECT AND PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Amāvisse, Docuisse, Legisse, Audivisse,	*to have,* or *to have had,*	*loved.* *taught.* *read.* *heard.*

FUTURE

audiuis

FUTURE TENSE.

Amātūrum esse,	to be about to	love.
Doctūrum esse,		teach.
Lectūrum esse,		read.
Audītūrum esse,*		hear.

Participle of the present tense.	*Participle of the future in* rus.
Amans, *loving.*	Amātūrus, *about to love.*
Docens, *teaching.*	Doctūrus, *about to teach.*
Legens, *reading.*	Lectūrus, *about to read.*
Audiens, *hearing.*	Audītūrus, *about to hear.*

GERUNDS.†

Amandi,	*of loving;*	amando,	*in loving;*	amandum,	*to love.*
Docendi,	*of teaching;*	docendo,	*in teaching;*	docendum,	*to teach.*
Legendi,	*of reading;*	legendo,	*in reading;*	legendum,	*to read.*
Audiendi,	*of hearing;*	audiendo,	*in hearing;*	audiendum,	*to hear.*

SUPINES.‡

Former Supine, or Sup. in um.		*Latter Supine, or Sup. in* u.	
Amātum,	*to love.*	Amātu,	*to be loved.*
Doctum,	*to teach.*	Doctu,	*to be taught.*
Lectum,	*to read.*	Lectu,	*to be read.*
Audītum,	*to hear.*	Audītu,	*to be heard.*

SECTION

---

* Not only *esse*, but sometimes *fuisse* and *fore*, are joined with the participle of the future in *rus*, to form the infinitive future. The participle is varied, and agrees with the noun to which it relates.

† The signification of gerunds is usually *active*, but sometimes *passive*; as, amandi, *of loving*, or *of being loved.* Gerunds are denominated from *re gerundâ*, i. e. gerendâ, because they frequently express *action*, or something to be done. Gerunds end like substantives, like which they are construed. They may be thus declined:

Sing. Nom. Amandum, *loving*; gen. amandi, *of loving*; dat. amando, *to loving*; ac. amandum, *loving*; ab. amando, *with loving.*

‡ They are called *supines*, i. e. *negligents*, because there is not much use made of them, since what they do may be answered several other ways; as, puellæ veniunt homines spectātum; or ut spectent; or causâ

SECTION IX.

Sum, ĕs, fui, eſſe, futūrus, *to be*, is thus declined:

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Sum,	*I am,*	Sŭmus,	*We are,*
Es,	*You are,**	Eſtis,	*You* or *ye are,*
Eſt,	*He is;*	Sunt,	*They are.*

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Eram,	*I was,*	Erāmus,	*We were,*
Eras,	*You were,**	Erātis,	*You* or *ye were,*
Erat,	*He was;*	Erant,	*They were.*

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuĭmus,	*We have been,*
Fuiſti,	*You have been,*	Fuiſtis,	*You* or *ye have been,*
Fuit,	*He has been;*†	Fuērunt *or* ēre,	*They have been.*

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I had been.

Fuĕram, fuĕras, fuĕrat; Fuĕramus, fuĕratis, fuĕrant.

FUTURE

---

causâ ſpectandi; or ſpectātūræ; or ad ſpectandum; or ad ſpectandos homines,—*the girls come to ſee men.*

The former ſupine commonly ſignifies like the infin. pref. act. or neut. but always paſſively in the future of the infin. paſſ. as, amātum iri, *about to be loved.* The latter ſupine has ſometimes an active or neuter ſignification. See Davidſon's Virg. Æneid L. I. ver. 445. Alſo Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 144.

Supines ſeem to be verbal nouns of the fourth declenſion, uſed only in the accuſative and ablative ſingular. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third perſon plur. of the pref. indicative; and *iuntur* in the paſſive; in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*, &c.

* In ſolemn diſcourſe, *thou art; thou waſt*, &c.

† In ſolemn diſcourſe; *hath been*, &c.

FUTURE TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
I shall or *will be.*					
Ero,	eris,	erit;	Erĭmus,	eritis,	erunt.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Es *or* esto,	*Be you* or *thou,*	Este *or* estōte,	*Be you* or *ye,*
Esto,	*Let him be;*	Sunto,	*Let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may or *can be; if I be,* &c.

Sim,	sis,	sit;	Sīmus,	sītis,	sint.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

I might, could, would or *should be.*

Essem,	esses,	esset;	Essēmus,	essētis,	essent.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

I might or *may have been.*

Fuĕrim,	fuĕris,	fuĕrit;	Fuĕrĭmus,	fuĕrĭtis,	fuĕrint.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might, could, would or *should have* or *had been.*

Fuissem,	fuisses,	fuisset;	Fuissēmus,	fuissētis,	fuissent.

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall or *will have been.*

Fuĕro,	fuĕris,	fuĕrit;	Fuĕrĭmus,	fuĕrĭtis,	fuĕrint.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Present and Preter-imperfect Tense. Esse, *to be.*
Preter-perfect and Preter-pluperfect. Fuisse, *to have been.*
Future Tense. Fōre, *or* futūrum esse, *to be about to be.**

SECTION

* In like manner are declined the compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *prosum*, which will be inserted with irregular verbs. Sum and its

SECTION X.

Example of the declenſion of paſſive and depōnent verbs, through the modes, tenſes, and perſons. Participles.

PASSIVE and deponent* verbs end in *or*, and have four conjugations, which are known by the ſecond perſon ſingular of the indicative mode preſent tenſe; thus, the firſt conjugation has *a* long before *ris* and *re;* as, *amāris* or *amāre;* the ſecond has *e* long before *ris* and *re;* as, *docēris* or *docēre;* the third has *e* ſhort before *ris* and *re;* as, *legĕris* or *legĕre;* the fourth has *i* long before *ris* and *re;* as, *audīris* or *audīre.* Thus,

Amor,	amāris *or* amāre,	amāri,	amātus ſum *or* fui,	*to be loved.*
Docĕor,	docēris *or* docēre,	docēri,	doctus ſum *or* fui,	*to be taught.*
Legor,	legĕris *or* legĕre,	legi,	lectus ſum *or* fui,	*to be read.*
Audĭor,	audīris *or* audīre,	audīri,	auditus ſum *or* fui,	*to be heard.*

Paſſive Voice.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Sing.		*Plur.*	
I am loved.				
Amor,	amāris *or* amāre,	amātur;	Amāmur, amāmĭni,	amantur.
Docĕor,	docēris *or* docēre,	docētur;	Docēmur, docēmĭni,	docentur.
Legor,	legĕris *or* legĕre,	legĭtur;	Legĭmur, legimĭni,	leguntur.
Audĭor,	audīris *or* audīre,	audītur;	Audīmur, audimĭni,	audĭuntur.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

I was loved.			
Am-ābar,	-ābāris *or* ābāre, -ābātur;	-ābāmur, -ābāmĭni,	-ābantur.
Doc-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* ēbāre, -ēbātur;	-ēbāmur, -ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
Leg-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* ēbāre, -ēbātur;	-ēbāmur, -ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
Audī-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* ēbāre, -ēbātur;	-ēbāmur, -ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.

PRETER-

its compounds want the gerunds, ſupines, and all the participles, but the future in *rus:* except that *ſum* and *poſſum* have *ens* and *potens*, participles of the preſ. tenſe. N. B. *Ens* is ſeldom uſed, unleſs by metaphyſicians.

* That is, proper deponents. See Sec. VII. No. 9. Note ‡.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.		*Plur.*
I have been loved.		
Amāt-us	*Singular.*	
Doct-us }	sum *or* fui,	ĕs *or* fuisti, eſt *or* fuit ;
Lect-us	*Plural.*	
Audīt-us }	-i sŭmus *or* fuĭmus,	-i ĕstis *or* fuistis, -i sunt, fuērunt *or* fuēre.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I had been loved.		
Amāt-us	*Sing.*	
Doct-us }	eram *or* fuĕram,	eras *or* fuĕras, erat or fuĕrat ;
Lect-us	*Plur.*	
Audit-us }	-i ĕrāmus *or* fuĕrāmus,	-i ĕrātis *or* fuĕrātis, -i ĕrant *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE TENSE.

I ſhall or will be loved.					
Am-ābor,	-ābĕris *or* -ābĕre,	-ābĭtur ;	-ābĭmur,	-ābĭmĭni,	-ābuntur.
Doc-ēbor,	-ēbĕris *or* -ēbĕre,	-ēbĭtur ;	-ēbĭmur,	-ēbĭmĭni,	-ēbuntur.
Leg-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
Audĭ-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Be you or *thou loved.*			*Be ye loved.*	
Am-āre	*or* -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmĭni,*	-antor.
Doc-ēre	*or* -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmini,	-entor.
Leg-ĕre	*or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor ;	-ĭmĭmi,	-untor.
Aud-īre	*or* -ītor,	-ītor ;	-īmĭni,	-ĭuntor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may or can be loved.				
Am-er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni, -entur.
Doc-ĕar,	-ĕāris *or* -ĕāre,	-ĕātur ;	-ĕāmur,	-ĕāmĭni, -ĕantur.
Leg-ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmĭni, -antur.
Aud-ĭar,	-ĭāris *or* -ĭāre,	-ĭātur ;	-ĭāmur,	-ĭāmĭni, -ĭantur.

PRETER-

* Amaminor, doceminor, &c. are rarely uſed. We ſometimes find *mino* in the ſecond perſon ſing. as, fabulino, for fare.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	*Plur.*
I might, could, would, or *should be loved.*	
Am-ārer, -ārēris *or* -ārēre, -ārētur;	-ārēmur, -ārēmĭni, -ārentur.
Doc-ērer, -ērēris *or* -ērēre, -ērētur;	-ērēmur, -ērēmĭni, -ērentur.
Leg-ĕrer, -ĕrēris *or* -ĕrēre, -ĕrētur;	-ĕrēmur, -ĕrēmĭni, -ĕrentur.
Aud-īrer, -īrēris *or* -īrēre, -īrētur;	-īrēmur, -īrēmĭni, -īrentur.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

I may or *might have been loved.*

Amāt-us Doct-us Lect-us Audīt-us	*Singular.* sim *or* fuĕrim, sis *or* fuĕris, sit *or* fuĕrit; *Plural.* -i sīmus *or* fuĕrĭmus, -i sītis *or* fuĕrĭtis, -i sint *or* fuĕrint.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might, could, would, or *should have been,* or *had been loved.*

Amāt-us Doct-us Lect-us Audīt-us	*Sing.* essem *or* fuissem, esses *or* fuisses, esset *or* fuisset; *Plur.* [fuissent. -i essēmus *or* fuissēmus, -i essētis *or* fuissētis, -i essent *or*

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall or *will have been loved.*

Amāt-us Doct-us Lect-us Audīt-us	*Sing.* ĕro *or* fuĕro, ĕris *or* fuĕris, ĕrit *or* fuĕrit; *Plur.* -i ĕrĭmus *or* fuĕrĭmus, -i ĕrĭtis *or* fuĕrĭtis, ĕrunt *or* fuĕrint.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRESENT AND PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Amāri, *to be loved.*	Legi, *to be read.*
Docēri, *to be taught.*	Audīri, *to be heard.*

PRETER-PERFECT AND PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Amātum Doctum Lectum Audītum	esse *or* fuisse, *to have been*	*loved.* *taught.* *read.* *heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

Amātum iri, * *or* amandum eſſe,†	*to be about to be*	*loved.*
Doctum iri, *or* docendum eſſe,		*taught.*
Lectum iri, *or* legendum eſſe,		*read.*
Audītum iri, *or* audiendum eſſe,		*heard.*

Participle of the Preter-perfect Tenſe.

Amātus, *loved.* Doctus, *taught.* Lectus, *read.* Audītus, *heard.*

Participle of the Future in dus.

Amandus, *to be loved.*
Docendus, *to be taught.*
Legendus, *to be read.*
Audiendus, *to be heard.*‡

SECTION

---

* Sometimes *fore* is uſed for *iri*; as, amatum fore. This ſome call futurum exactum, or perfectum. Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 102.

† Or fuiſſe, &c.

‡ Participles of the preſent tenſe are declined like felix; all the reſt like bŏn-us, -a, -um. q. v.

Verbs in *or* ſupply the preter-perfect and preter-pluperfect indicative, the preter-perfect, preter-pluperfect, and future ſubjunctive, and the preter-perfect and preter-pluperfect infinitive, by the verb ſum, placed with the participle of the preter-perfect tenſe, which always, in ſuch ſituation, agrees with the preceding nominative or accuſative caſe, in *gender* and *number*. And, when the future of the infinitive paſſive is formed of the participle of the future in *dus*, and *eſſe* or *fuiſſe*, the participle agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it refers. The ſupine with *iri* is never altered.

Deponent verbs, if they ſignify actively, uſually have all the gerunds, ſupines, and participles; but, if their ſignification is neuter, they want the participle of the future in *dus*.

The participle of the preter-perfect tenſe put with *ſum* generally denotes a thing done, without regard to the time when; but, with *fui*, it denotes a thing done, and ſome time paſſed. The like diſtinction is commonly to be ſeen in all the tenſes, where auxiliaries of different tenſes are uſed.

SECTION XI.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRŌSUM, prōdes, prōfui, prōdeſſe, prōfutūrus, *to profit.*
Poſſum, potes, potui, poſſe, ——— *to be able.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Prōſum,	prōdes,	prōdeſt;	prōsŭmus,	prōdeſtis,	prōſunt.
Poſſum,	pŏtes,	pŏteſt;	poſsŭmus,	pŏteſtis,	poſſunt.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Prōd-ĕram, Pot-ĕram, } -ĕras, -ĕrat; -ĕrāmus, -ĕrātis, -ĕrant.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Prōfŭ-i, Potŭ-i, } -iſti, -it; -ĭmus, -iſtis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Prōfu-ĕram, Potu-ĕram, } -ĕras, -ĕrat; -ĕrāmus, -ĕrātis, -ĕrant.

FUTURE TENSE.

Prōd-ĕro, Pot-ĕro, } -ĕris, -ĕrit; -ĕrĭmus, -ĕrĭtis, -ĕrunt.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Prōd-es *or* -eſto, -eſto; -eſte *or* -eſtōte, -ſunto.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

* Poſſum wants the imperative.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Prō-ſim, Poſ-ſim,	-ſis,	-ſit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-ſint.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Prōdeſ-ſem, Poſ-ſem,	-ſes,	-ſet;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-ſent.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Prōfu-ĕrim, Potu-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Prōfuiſ-ſem, Potuiſ-ſem,	-ſes,	-ſet;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-ſent.

FUTURE TENSE.

Prōfu-ĕro, Potu-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ŭ̆rĭmus,	-ŭ̆rĭtis,	-ĕrint.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Preſent & Preter-imperfect. — Prōdeſſe. Poſſe.

Preter-perf. & Preter-pluperf. — Profuiſſe. Potuiſſe.

Future. — Prōfŏre *or* profutūrum eſſe. Wanting in *poſſum*. — *Pref. Part.* Wanting in *prōſum*. Poſſum has pŏtens.

Participle of the Future in rus. — Prōfutūrus, a, um. Wanting in *poſſum*.

Vŏlo,	velle,	volui,	*to be willing*, or *to will*.
Nōlo,	nolle,	nolui,	*to be unwilling*.
Mālo,	malle,	malui,	*to be more willing*.

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
Vŏlo,	vis,	vult;	vŏlŭmus,	vultis,	vŏlunt.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult;	nōlŭmus,	nonvultis,	nōlunt.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult;	mālŭmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Vŏl-ēbam,
Nōl-ēbam,
Māl-ēbam, } -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Vŏlu-i,
Nōlu-i,
Mālu-i, } -isti, -it; -ĭmus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Vŏlu-ĕram,
Nōlu-ĕram,
Mālu-ĕram, } -ĕras, -ĕrat; -ĕrāmus, -ĕrātis, -ĕrant.

FUTURE TENSE.

Vŏl-am,
Nōl-am,
Māl-am, } -es, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Nōl-ī *or* -īto; -īte *or* -ītōte.

N. B. *Volo and malo have no imperative.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Vĕl-im,
Nōl-im,
Māl-im, } -is, -it; -īmus, -ītis, -int.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*
Vel-lem, Nol-lem, Mal-lem,	-les, -let;	-lēmus, -lētis,	-lent.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Vŏlu-ĕrim, Nōlu-ĕrim, Mālu-ĕrim,	-ĕris, -ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus, -ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Vŏluiſ-ſem, Nōluiſ-ſem, Māluiſ-ſem,	-ſes, -ſet;	-ſēmus, -ſētis,	-ſent.

FUTURE TENSE.

Vŏlu-ĕro, Nōlu-ĕro, Mālu-ĕro,	-ĕris, -ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus, -ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Preſ. and Preter-imp.	*Preter-perf. and Preter-plup.*
Velle.	Vŏluiſſe.
Nolle.	Nōluiſſe.
Malle.	Māluiſſe.

Participle of the Preſent Tenſe.
Vŏlens. Nōlens. Mālens.

Edo,	ederе *or* eſſe,	edi,	ĕſum *or* eſtum,	*to eat.*
Eo,	īre,	īvi,	ĭtum,	*to go.*
Fĕro,	ferre, tŭli,		lātum,	*to bear.*
Fīo,	fĭĕri,	factus ſum *or* fui,		*to be made.*
Fĕror,	ferri,	lātus ſum *or* fui,		*to be borne.*

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Edo,	ĕdis *or* es,	ĕdit *or* est;		ĕdĭmus,	ĕdĭtis *or* estis,	ĕdunt.
Eo,	is,	it;		imus,	itis,	eunt.
Fĕro,	fers,	fert;		fĕrĭmus,	fertis,	fĕrunt.
Fio,	fis,	fit;		fimus,	fĭtis,	fiunt.
Fĕror,	ferris *or* ferre,	fertur;		ferĭmur,	fĕrĭmĭni,	fĕruntur.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Edē-bam,
I-bam,
Fĕrē-bam,
Fiē-bam,
} -bas, -bat; -bāmus, -bātis, -bant.

Fĕrē-bar, -bāris *or* -bāre, -bātur; -bāmur, -bāmĭni, -bantur.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Ed-i,
Iv-i,
Tŭl-i,
} -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.

Sing.

Fact-us
Lāt-us
} sum *or* fui, es *or* fuisti, est *or* fuit;

Plur.

-i sŭmus *or* fuĭmus, -i estis *or* fuistis, -i sunt, fuērunt *or* fuēre.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Eděr-am,
Ivĕr-am,
Tŭlĕr-am,
} -as, -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

Sing.

Fact-us
Lāt-us
} ĕram *or* fuĕram, eras *or* fuĕras, erat *or* fuĕrat;

Plur.

-i erāmus *or* fuerāmus, -i erātis *or* fuerātis, -i erant *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE TENSE.

Edam,	ĕdes,	ĕdet;	ĕdēmus,	ĕdētis,	ĕdent.
Ibo,	ībis,	ībit;	ībĭmus,	ībĭtis,	ībunt.
Fĕram,	fĕres,	fĕret;	fĕrēmus,	fĕrētis,	fĕrent.
Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.
Fĕr-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emĭni,	-entur.

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE MODE.

	Sing.		*Plur.*	
Ede, ĕdĭto, *or* es,	ĕsto;	ĕdĭto,	ĕsto;	ĕdĭte, ĕdĭtōte *or* este,	estōte;	ĕdunto.
I *or* ĭto,	ĭto;		ĭte *or* ītōte,		ĕunto.
Fer* *or* ferto,	ferto;		ferte *or* fertōte,		fĕrunto.
Fi *or* fĭto,	fĭto;		fīte *or* fītōte,		fiunto.
Ferre *or* fertor,	fertor;		fĕrimĭni,		fĕruntor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Ed-am, E-am, Fĕr-am, Fi-am, } -as -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

Fĕr-ar, -āris *or* -āre, -ātur; -āmur, -āmĭni, -antur.

PRETER-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Eder-em *or* essem, ĕdĕres *or* esses, &c.

I-rem, Fer-rem, Fĭĕ-rem, } -res, -ret; -rēmus, -rētis, -rent.

Fer-rer; -rēris *or* -rēre, -rētur; -rēmur, -rēmĭni, -rentur.

PRETER-PERFECT TENSE.

Eder-im, Ivĕr-im, Tŭlĕr-im, } -is, -it; -ĭmus, -ĭtis, -ĭnt.

Fact-us Lāt-us } sim *or* fuĕrim, sis *or* fuĕris, sit *or* fuĕrit; -i sīmus *or* fuerĭmus, -i sītis *or* fuerĭtis, -i sint.

PRETER-

* The imperatives of dico, dūco, and făcio are contracted in the same manner with *fer*. Thus we say die, duc, fac, instead of dice, duce, face. They, however, sometimes occur in the regular form.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.			*Plur.*	
Edĭ-ſem, Iviſ-ſem, Tŭliſ-ſem,	-ſes,	-ſet;	-sēmus,	-sētis, -ſent.
Fact-us Lāt-us	eſſem *or* fuiſſem,	eſſes *or* fuiſſes, &c.		

FUTURE TENSE.

Edĕr-o, Ivĕr-o, Tulĕr-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis, -int.
Fact-us Lāt-us	ero *or* fuĕro, -i erĭmus *or* fuerĭmus,	ĕris *or* fuĕris, &c.		erit *or* fuerit;

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres. and Preter-imp. Tenſe.	*Preter-perf. and preter-plup. Tenſe.*
Edĕre *or* eſſe.	Ediſſe.
Ire.	Iviſſe.
Ferre.	Tŭliſſe.
Fĭĕri.	Factum Lātum } eſſe *or* fuiſſe.
Ferri.	

FUTURE TENSE.

Eſūrum or eſtūrum Itūrum Lātūrum	eſſe *or* fuiſſe.		
Factum Lātum	iri, or	Făciendum Fĕrendum	eſſe.

Participle of the pres. Tenſe.	*Participles of the future in* rus & dus.
Edens.	Eſūrus, &c. Edendus.
Iens, Gen. euntis.	Itūrus.
Fĕrens.	Lātūrus.

Preter-per. &c.	
Eſus, &c. Factus. Lātus.	Faciendus. Fĕrendus.

GERUNDS.

GERUNDS.

Eden-di,
Eun-di,
Fĕren-di, } do, dum.

SUPINES.

Supine in um.	*Supine in* u.
Edum *or* esum.	Esu *or* estu.
Itum.	Factu.*
Lātum.	Latu.

SECTION XII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. A VERB is called *impersonal*, which has only the termination of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.†

2. Impersonal

* Fiō is used as the passive of facio. The compounds of *facio*, which retain *a*, have fio in the passive voice; as, calefacio, *to warm*; passive *calefio*.

The compounds of irregular verbs are conjugated and declined like their simples.

Thus,	Affĕro,	afferre,	attŭli,	allātum.
	Confĕro,	conferre,	contŭli,	collātum.
As, *eo*,	Quĕo,	quire,	quīvi,	quĭtum.
	Nequĕo,	nequire,	nequīvi,	nequitum.

To irregular verbs may be properly added such as are called *neuter passive*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice; the rest like the active.

Thus, Solĕo, solēre, solĭtus sum *or* fui.

† We sometimes find those verbs, which are called proper impersonals, in other persons beside the third singular; and even those used personally.

2. Impersonal verbs are declined, in the form of the third person singular, through all the modes and tenses, excepting, usually, the imperative.†

3. The ten following are called proper impersonal verbs; *dĕcet, lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet,* mĭsĕret, ŏportet, pœnĭtet, pĭget, pŭdet, tædet.*

4. Any verb may be used impersonally.

SECTION XIII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE verbs want certain modes, tenses, and persons, &c. Such are the following:

Indic. Pref. Aio, aĭs, aĭt; aiunt.
Preter-imp. Ai-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.
Preter-perf. aĭsti.
Subjunct. Pref. aias, aiat; aiāmus, aiātis, aiant.
Imperative. Ai. *Particip. Pref.* Aiens.

Indicat. Pref. In-quĭro *or* in-quam, -quis, -quit; -quĭmus, -quĭtis, -quĭunt.
Preter-imp. Inquiēbat; inquiēbant.
Preter-perf. Inquisti.
Future. Inquĭes, inquĭet.
Imperative. Inque, inquĭto. *Particip. pref.* Inquĭens.
Imperative. Age *or* ăgĕdum; ăgĭte.
Imperative. Apăge; ăpăgĭte.
Subjunct. Pret. perf. Aus-im, -is, -it; -int.
Subjunct. Pret. perf. Fax-im, -is, -it; -int.
Subjunct. Pret. imp. Fŏr-em, -es, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Infinit. Fut. Fŏre, *to be hereafter*, the same with futūrum esse.

Indicat.

† Impersonal verbs usually want the gerunds, supines, and participles. Yet we find pœnĭtendi, pœnĭtens, pœnĭtendus; pŭdendo, pŭdĭtūrus, pŭdendus; lĭcĭtus, lĭcĭturus; pertœsus, pĭgendo, &c. See Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 140.

* Liquet has no preterite tenses; nor defit, infit, and ovat. Verbs neuter often form passive impersonals; as, statur, ītum est.

GERUNDS.

Eden-di,
Eun-di,
Fĕren-di, } do, dum.

SUPINES.

Supine in um.	*Supine in* u.
Esum *or* estum.	Esu *or* estu.
Itum.	Factu.*
Lātum.	Latu.

SECTION XII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. A VERB is called *impersonal*, which has only the termination of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.†

2. Impersonal

* Fiō is used as the passive of facio. The compounds of *facio*, which retain *a*, have fio in the passive voice; as, calefacio, *to warm*; passive *calefio*.

The compounds of irregular verbs are conjugated and declined like their simples.

Thus,	Affĕro,	afferre,	attŭli,	allātum.
	Confĕro,	conferre,	contŭli,	collatum.
As, *eo*,	Quĕo,	quire,	quivi,	quĭtum.
	Nequĕo,	nequire,	nequivi,	nequitum.

To irregular verbs may be properly added such as are called *neuter passive*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice; the rest like the active.

Thus, Solĕo, solēre, solĭtus sum *or* fui.

† We sometimes find those verbs, which are called proper impersonals, in other persons besides the third singular; and even those used personally.

2. Impersonal verbs are declined, in the form of the third person singular, through all the modes and tenses, excepting, usually, the imperative.†

3. The ten following are called proper impersonal verbs; *dĕcet, lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet,* mĭsĕret, ŏportet, pœnĭtet, pĭget, pŭdet, tædet.*

4. Any verb may be used impersonally.

SECTION XIII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE verbs want certain modes, tenses, and persons, &c. Such are the following:

Indic. Pref. Aio, aïs, aït; aiunt.
Preter-imp. Ai-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat; -ēbāmus, -ēbātis, -ēbant.
Preter-perf. aïsti.
Subjunct. Pref. aias, aiat; aiāmus, aiātis, aiant.
Imperative. Ai. *Particip. Pref.* Aiens.

Indicat. Pref. In-quio *or* in-quam, -quis, -quit; -quĭmus, -quĭtis, -quĭunt.
Preter-imp. Inquiēbat; inquiēbant.
Preter-perf. Inquisti.
Future. Inquĭes, inquĭet.
Imperative. Inque, inquīto. *Particip. pref.* Inquĭens.
Imperative. Age *or* ăgĕdum; ăgīte.
Imperative. Apăge; ăpăgīte.
Subjunct. Pret. perf. Aus-im, -is, -it; -int.
Subjunct. Pret. perf. Fax-im, -is, -it; -int.
Subjunct. Pret. imp. Fŏr-em, -es, -et; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.
Infinit. Fut. Fŏre, *to be hereafter*, the same with futūrum esse.

Indicat.

† Impersonal verbs usually want the gerunds, supines, and participles. Yet we find pœnĭtendi, pœnĭtens, pœnĭtendus; pŭdendo, pŭdĭtūrus, pŭdendus; lĭcĭtus, lĭcĭturus; pertœsus, pĭgendo, &c. See Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 140.

* Liquet has no preterite tenses; nor defit, infit, and ovat. Verbs neuter often form passive impersonals; as, statur, ītum est.

Indicat. Pref.	Ĭnfit;	infĭunt.
Imperative.	Cēdo;	cēdīte.
Indicat. Pref.	Quæſo;	quæſŭmus.

Indicat. Fut. Avēbis.
Imperat. Avē *or* ăvēto; ăvēte *or* ăvētōte.
Infinit. Pref. Avēre.
Imperative. Salve *or* ſălveto; ſalvēte *or* ſalvētōte.

Indicat. Fut. Salvēbis. *Infin. pref.* Salvēre.

Cœpi, ōdi, -ĕram, -ĕrim, -iſſem, -ĕro, -iſſe. Cœptum, cœptu, cœptūrus. *and* mĕmĭni. Osūrus. Mĕmĭni; mĕmento, mĕmentōte.

The three laſt verbs may have the ſign either of the preterite or preſent, as the ſenſe requires.*

SECTION XIV.

Remarks on Participles and Gerunds.

1. PARTICIPLES are changed into adjectives, called *participials*, four ways. 1. When they govern a caſe, which their verbs will not govern; as, *appĕtens vini.* 2. When they are compounded with a prepoſition, which their verbs do not admit; as, *indoctus.* 3. When they form the degrees of compariſon; as, *amans, amantior, amantiſſimus.*

---

* Aio, *I ſay*; inquio *or* inquam, *I ſay*; age *or* agedum, *come on*; apăge, *go hence*; auſim, *I may dare*; faxim, *I might have done*; fŏrem, *I might be*; infit, *he begins*; cēdo, *give* or *tell*; quæſo, *I aſk* or *pray*; ăve, *hail*; ſalve, *God ſave you*, or *farewell*; cœpi, *I began* or *begin*; odi, *I hated* or *I hate*; mĕmĭni, *I remembered* or *remember.*

Inſtead of odi, we ſometimes ſay, *oſus ſum*; and always exoſus, peroſus ſum, and not exodi, perodi.

Furo, *to be mad*, dor, *to be given*, and for, *to ſpeak*, as alſo *der* and *fer*, are not uſed in the firſt perſon ſingular. Sci of ſcio is not in uſe. The comic poets uſe ſis, ſodes, ſultis, and capſis, for *ſi vis, ſi audes, ſi vultis*, and *cape ſi vis.*

mus. 4. When they have no reſpect to time; as, *vir doctus, a learned man.*

2. From ſome neuter verbs are formed participles of the preter-perfect and preter-pluperfect tenſe; as, *errātus, ceſſātus, ŏbĭtus;* and alſo of the future in dus; as, *cărendus.*

3. The gerunds, and participle of the future in *dus*, of verbs in *io*, and ſome others, often take *u*, inſtead of *e*; as, *făciun-di, -do, -dum; -dus; pŏtiundum, pŏliundi;* for *făciendi*, &c.

SECTION XV.

ADVERB.

1. AN adverb is an indeclinable part of ſpeech, *added to a verb, adjective*, or *another adverb*, to expreſs ſome circumſtance, quality, or manner of their ſignification.

2. Some adverbs, derived from adjectives, are compared like their primitives; as, *doctè, doctius, doctiſſimè; benè, melius, optimè.*

3. Some words are accounted adverbs, which are not; as, ăge, *come on.* Sect. xiii. Ergo, *for the ſake of*, is a ſubſtantive from the Greek word, *ergon;* dēnuo, *anew*, is put for *de novo;* nudiuſtertius, for *nunc dies eſt tertius;* ſcīlĭcet, for *ſcire licet;* hŏdie, for *hoc die.**

SECTION

* Latin adverbs are made of nouns, pronouns, and prepoſitions, and uſually end in *e, o, u, c, m, us*, or *ter*; as, ſanè, *truly*; nunc, *now.* Moſt Engliſh words ending in *ly* are adverbs.

The adverb is not an eſſential part of ſpeech. It only ſerves to expreſs conciſely, in one word, what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more; as, ſăpienter, *wiſely*, for *cum ſăpientiâ*; hic, *here*, for *hoc in loco*; ſemper, *always*, for *in omni tempŏre*; ſēmel, for *ūnâ vĭce*; bis, for *duōbus vĭcĭbus*; Mĕhercŭle, for *Hercŭles me jŭvet.*

SECTION XVI.

CONJUNCTION.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable word, which ſerves to connect words and ſentences; of which part of ſpeech there are ſeveral claſſes.

1. Copulatives; as, et, ac, atque, que, *and;* ĕtiam, ĭtem, quŏque, *alſo.*
2. Disjunctives; as, aŭt, ve, vel, ſeu, ſīve, *either, or.*
3. Adverſatives; as, ſed, vērum, autem, aſt, at, *but.*
4. Conditionals; as, ſi, ſin, ſiquĭdem, *if, but if.*
5. Cauſals; as, nam, namque, ĕnim, *for;* quia, *becauſe.*
6. Illatives; as, ergo, ĭgitur, ĭdeo, ĭtaque, *therefore.*
7. Exceptives; as, ni, nĭſi, *unleſs;* præterquam, *but.*
8. Ordinatives;* as, deinde, *afterwards;* inſŭper, *moreover.*

SECTION XVII.

PREPOSITION.

1. A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable word, which, when placed in appoſition,† ſhows the relation of one thing to another; as, ſuſtŭlit palmas ad fidĕra; *he lifted up his hands to the ſtars.*

2. Prepoſitions in compoſition§ ſometimes alter the ſignification of the words, with which they are compounded.‡

SECTION

* Grammarians have made other diviſions of the conjunctions, of leſs importance; as, *interrogatives, finals, conceſſives,* &c. Some conjunctions ſtand firſt in a ſentence; as, *at, atque, nec,* &c. Some ſtand in the ſecond place; as, *autem, vĕro, quŏque,* &c.

† That is, before a word, which it governs in ſome caſe.

§ That is, when it is joined to a word, as a conſtituent part of it.

‡ For a particular account of the prepoſitions, and the caſes they govern, ſee Sect. ix.

Where are

SECTION XVIII.

INTERJECTION.*

AN interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a ſentence, to expreſs ſome paſſion or emotion of the mind; of which there are ſeveral ſorts.

1. Thoſe of grief; as, ēheu, *alas;* hei, *wo, alas;* ah, *ah, ahah.*
2. Thoſe of rejoicing; as, ēvax, *hey, brave.*
3. Wonder; as, păpæ, *O ſtrange;* vah, *hah.*
4. Praiſe; as, euge, *well done, O brave.*
5. Silence; as, au, ſt, pax, *ſilence, 'ſt, huſh.*
6. Calling; as, heus, *ho, ſoho.*

---

* There is not much reaſon to reckon interjections as a part of ſpeech, as they are little more than inarticulate ſounds, or ſighs of the mind, in *rejoicing, calling, &c.*

Adjectives of the neuter gender are ſometimes uſed for interjections; as, mălum, *with a miſchief;* infandum, *O ſhame, fy;* miſĕrum, *O wretched;* nĕfas, *O the wickedneſs.*

Evasc fortes Americani,
qui superbos Britannos
vos vincitis et terra
et Neptuno que,
etiam dico
Fortes,

PART

PART III.

SYNTAX.

SECTION I.

Agreement between the verb and its nominative caſe: between the adjective and its ſubſtantive: the relative and its antecedent. Of verbs between two nominatives: relatives and adjectives between two ſubſtantives. Of nouns ſingular of multitude, &c. Of the infinitive mode, or part of a ſentence, put for the nominative caſe to a verb. Of ſubſtantive verbs; impersonal verbs.

1. THE nominative caſe governs the verb.

2. The verb agrees with its nominative caſe, in number and perſon;* as,

Ego ſcribo. Canis latrat.	*I write. A dog barks.*
Pueri ſcribunt.	*The boys write.*
Boni *auctores leguntur.*	*Good authors are read.*

3. The

* One word is ſaid to agree with another, when it is in the like caſe, number, gender, or perſon. There are three concords; viz. between the verb and its nominative caſe, between the adjective and its ſubſtantive, and between the relative and its antecedent.

To find the nominative caſe, aſk a queſtion on the verb, by the word *who*, *which*, or *what*; and the word which anſwers to the queſtion is the nominative caſe to the verb; as, Queſtion. *Who writes?* Anſwer. *I.* *What barks?* Anſ. *A dog.*

When

3. The adjective, whether noun, pronoun, or participle,* agrees with its ſubſtantive, in number, caſe, and gender; as,

Bonus puer diſcit.	*The good boy learns.*
Fœmina caſta amatur.	*A chaſte woman is loved.*
Mali auctores negligentur.	*Bad authors will be neglected.*

4. The relative, eſpecially *qui*, agrees with the ſubſtantive foregoing, called the *antecedent*,† in number, gender, and perſon; as,

Deus puniet *ſceleſtos, qui* violant *ejus* præcepta.	*God will puniſh the wicked, who tranſgreſs his commands.*
Eſt bonus *puer, quem* gloria excitat, et laus delectat.	*He is a good boy, whom glory encourages, and commendation delights.*

5. When there is no nominative caſe between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but, when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or ſome other word in the ſentence, on which it immediately depends;‡ as,

Deus,

When the firſt and ſecond perſons are nominatives to verbs, they are ſeldom expreſſed in Latin, unleſs for the ſake of emphaſis or diſtinction; and, in the continuation of diſcourſe, the third perſon is alſo often underſtood.

They are ſometimes omitted in Engliſh, particularly in the imperative mode.

When a ſubſtantive is put in appoſition with *ego, tu, nos*, or *vos*, the verb is of the perſon of theſe pronouns; as, Tua progenies mortalia demŏror arma. Here *demŏror* agrees with *ego* underſtood.

* The reaſons why this rule applies to adjective pronouns and participles are ſhown, Part II. Sec. VII. No. 9. Note‡. Alſo Sec. XIV. No. 1. and Sec. V. No. 10 and 11.

To find the ſubſtantive with which an adjective agrees, aſk a queſtion by the word *who, which*, or *what*; and the word which anſwers to the queſtion is the ſubſtantive.

† See Part II. Sec. V. No 11. Note *, 2.

‡ As the relative may be the nominative caſe to a verb, ſo it may be the ſubſtantive to an adjective. The antecedent may be found, by aſking what it is, to which the relative refers.

As

Deus, *qui* omnia *creavit*, colendus est.

God, who created all things, is to be worshipped.

Utere virtute, *quâ* nihil est *melius*.

Practise virtue, than which nothing is better.

See Section V. No. 4 and 13.

6. A verb

As the relative must always have an *antecedent* expressed or understood, it may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which one is almost always expressed, usually the former; as, *Vir, qui* (vir) *audit; vir, quem* (virum) *audio. Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hac* (arte) *se exerceat.* Cic.

Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat*; for *sunt homines, quos* (homines) *hoc genus minime juvat.* Hor.

Of persons, the first is said to be more worthy than the second, and the second than the third. Of genders, the masculine is most worthy, and the feminine next; but, if the substantives, either all, or some, signify things without life, the adjective and relative are commonly neuter.

When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui dico*; rarely *qui dicit.* In English, it may agree with either; as, *I am the man, who speak, or speaks.* But, when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence. Thus, it is proper to say, *I am the man, who takes care of your interest*; but, if I add, *at the expense of my own*, it would be improper. It should be either *his own*, or *who take.*

The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit, Tyrii tenuere coloni* (that is, *quam* or *eam.*) When once expressed, the relative is, sometimes, afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case.

The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuêsti*; for *quæ consuêsti agere*; or *quorum aliquid agere consuêsti.*

It often happens, that the Latin relative cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quæ cum ita sint*; *when things were so*; not *which things when they were so*, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *were*, which is improper.

Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, Quem dicunt me esse? *who do they say that I am?* not *whom.* As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive

6. A verb between two nominative cases of different numbers,—an adjective or relative between two substantives of different genders or numbers, may agree with either of them; as,

Omnia *pontus erat* (or erant.)	*All things was* (or were) *sea.*
Non procul ab eo *flumine, quod* (or quam) Saliam vocant.	*Not far from that river, which they call Salia.*
Non omnis error *stultitia* est *dicenda* (or dicendus.)	*Every error is not to be called folly.*

7. After *meus, tuus, suus, noster*, and *vester*, the genitives of their primitives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri*, and *vestri*, are elegantly left out, and yet the adjective, participle, or relative, agreeing with them, is expressed; as,

Fuit *meum* (mei understood) *solius* peccatum.	*It was my fault alone.*
Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.	*In the memory of us all.*

8. A noun singular of multitude, also two or more nouns singular, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural; and, if they be of different persons or genders, the verb, adjective, or relative will be of the most worthy,* as,

Turba

---

subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, Audire cupio quæ legeris; *I wish to hear what you have read;* that is, *what perhaps or probably you may have read.* Audire cupio quæ legisti; *I wish to hear what you* (actually) *have read.*

The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, as well as *qui*, are relatives.

The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives, either expressed or understood, which answer to them.

To the construction of the relative may be subjoined that of the *answer* to a *question.* The answer is usually put in the same case with the question; as, *Quem librum legis? Horatium. Quid quæris? Librum.* That is, *quæro.*

But, sometimes, the construction is varied.

* Sometimes the verb or adjective agrees with the nearest preceding noun or pronoun, and is understood to the rest; as, Et ego et tu es in culpâ; *both I and you are in the fault.*

A collective

Turba ruant. *Cicero* et *Cato furunt* sapientes et docti. *Ego* et meus *frater legimus* Terentium.	*The multitude rush. Cicero and Cato were wise and learned. I and my brother read Terence.*

9. The infinitive mode,* an adverb with a genitive case, or some other part of a sentence, is sometimes put for the nominative case to a verb, the substantive to an adjective, and the antecedent to a relative; and then the verb is of the third person, and the adjective or relative of the neuter gender; as,

Errare est humanum.	*To mistake is human frailty.*
Mentiri est turpe.	*To lie is base.*
Partim signorum sunt combusta.	*Part of the standards were burnt.*

10. Verbs substantive, certain passive verbs of calling, &c. † have the same case *after* as *before* them; as,

Virtus

A collective noun, or a noun singular of multitude, may be joined either with a verb plural, or singular. When it is used with a verb singular, it expresses many considered as one whole; but, when joined with a verb plural, it signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to a verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but, if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will also be plural, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars ebrietate trudunt*, viz. *formicæ*. Virg. *Magna pars reptæ*, viz. *virgines*. Liv. Sometimes, but rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, i. e. *exercitus* or *numerus*. Virg. An. Lib. vii. ver. 624.

The pronoun *it*, in English, is often the nominative to the verb, when we speak either of persons or things; as, *Ibis I; It was he*: in Latin, *Ego sum; ille fuit*. The phrase in English, *you was*, instead of *you were*, is a great inaccuracy in grammar. So it is very improper to say *there's two* or *three of us*, for *there are; great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

* With respect to such infinitives, see Sec. X. No. 10. Note *.

† Any verb may have the same case after as before it, when both words refer to the same person, or thing. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or that one substantive is put in apposition with another: for these words

Virtus eſt pretioſa *gemma.*	*Virtue is a precious jewel.*
Scio *vos eſſe diſcipulos.*	*I know that you are ſcholars.*
Non licet *nobis eſſe* tam diſertis.	*It is not lawful for us to be ſo eloquent.*

11. Impersonal verbs have no nominative caſe.

SECTION

---

words in a ſentence, which refer to the ſame object, muſt always agree together, how much ſoever disjoined.

The verbs, which moſt frequently have the ſame caſe *after* as *before* them, are *ſubſtantive* and *neuter* verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *exiſto; eo, ſedeo*, &c. Alſo paſſive verbs of *naming, calling*, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor;* alſo *videor, exiſtimor, creor, conſtituor, ſalutor, defingor*, &c. Theſe and other like verbs admit after them only the *nominative, accuſative*, or *dative*. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them the accuſative; as, Intereſt omnium eſſe bonos, i. e. *ſe eſſe bonos.*

In ſome inſtances, either the nominative or accuſative may be uſed; as, *Cupio dici doctus*, or *doctum*, i. e. *me dici doctum; cupio eſſe clemens, non putari mendax; vult eſſe medius.*

When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos eſt decem talenta.* Ter. *Omnia pontus erant.* Ovid.

But they ſometimes agree with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio eſt.*

So when an adjective is applied to two ſubſtantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that ſubſtantive which is moſt the ſubject of diſcourſe; as, *Oppidum eſt appellatum Poſſidonia.* Plin.

But ſometimes the adjective or participle agrees with the nearer ſubſtantive.

When the infinitive of any verb, particularly of the ſubſtantive verb *ſum*, has before it the dative, governed by an impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accuſative; as, *Licet mihi eſſe beato;* or *licet mihi eſſe beatum, me* being underſtood.

The poets uſe certain forms of expreſſion, which are not to be imitated in proſe; as, *Retŭlit Ajax Jovis eſſe pronĕpos*, for *ſe eſſe pronepotem.* Ovid. *Cum pateris ſapiens emendatuſque vocari*, for *te vocari ſapientem.* Hor.

SECTION II.

Genitive case after substantive nouns,—adjectives, verbs, adverbs, &c.

1. WHEN two substantives come together signifying different things, the latter is put in the genitive case; as,

Domus Cæsăris.	*The house of Cæsar*, or *Cæsar's house.*
Timor Domini est *initium sapientiæ.*	*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.**

2. Two

---

* When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession: and, therefore, may be elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *domus paterna*: and among the poets, *labor Herculis*, or *Herculeus*; *Ensis Evandrius*, or *Evandri*.

When a substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, Amor Dei, *the love of God*, may either mean the love of God towards us, or our love towards Him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active, or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei* always implies, *Deus timetur*.

Either the former or latter substantive may be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromachē*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*. See Book X. No. 11.

We sometimes find the dative case used after a verb for the genitive, particularly by the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*.

The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other prepositions beside *of*; as, Descensus Averni, *the descent to Avernus*; Prudentia juris, *skill in law*.

Substantive *pronouns* are governed in the genitive like substantive *nouns*; as, Pars mei, *a part of me*. In like manner adjective pronouns are governed, when they are used as substantives, or their noun is understood; as, Liber ejus, illius, hujus, &c. *the book of him*, or *his book*, i. e. *hominis*: *the book of her*, or *her book*, i. e. *fœminæ*. Libri eorum *or* earum, *their books*; Cujus liber, *the book of whom*, or *whose book*. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *jus suum*, not *sui*. When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrûm, vestrûm*: but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; as, Amor mei, *the love of me*, that is, *the love with which I am loved*: Amor meus, *my love*, that is, *the love with which I love*. Yet we sometimes find the possessives used passively, and their primitives actively.

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have, sometimes, nouns, pronouns,

2. Two or more substantives signifying the same person, or thing, are put in the same case by apposition; as,

Jesus Christus, Filius Dei, est Salvator mundi.	*Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the Saviour of the world.*
Effodiuntur *opes, irritamenta* malorum.	*Riches, the incentives of vice, are dug out of the earth.*
Urbs Athenæ.*	*The city Athens.*

3. When of two substantives the latter has an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative;† as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, *or* summâ prudentiâ.	*A man of the greatest prudence.*

4. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive;‡ as,

Multum pecuniæ.	Hoc noctis.	*Much money.*	*This night.*

5. Verbal

---

pronouns, and participles, after them in the genitive case; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis.* Cic. See Sec. I. No. 7.

The reciprocals *sui* and *suus* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se.*

* A plural noun may be in apposition to a singular noun, and a singular noun to a plural. Nouns in apposition may be of different genders.

When a common noun in the plural is placed in apposition to two or more proper names of different genders, the common noun must be of the most worthy gender.

† In some phrases the genitive only is used; as, *Magni formicæ laboris; viri imi subsellii; homo minimi pretii,* &c. In other phrases the ablative only is used; as, *Es bono animo.* Sometimes both cases are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis.* Cic. The ablative case more frequently occurs in prose, than the genitive. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative, or in that case which the adjective governs; as, *Vir præstantis ingenii,* or *præstanti ingenio;* or *vir præstans ingenio,* and sometimes *præstans ingenii.*

‡ The adjectives which thus govern the genitive, like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum,* &c. To which add *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid,* &c.

The noun *nihil,* and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid,* &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the second declension, in the genitive; as,

5. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Memor esto brevis *ævi.*	*Be mindful of your short life.*
Audax ingenii.	*Bold in nature.*
Tenax propositi.	*Constant to his purpose.*

6. Adjectives signifying plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative;† as,

Plenus iræ *or* ira.	*Full of anger.*
Inops rationis *or* ratione.	*Void of reason.*

7. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural;‡ as,

Primus

---

as, nihil sincēri, *no sincerity*; but they seldom govern, in this manner, adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*.

Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, usually the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum*; *opaca locorum*; *tellūris operta*; *loca* being understood, &c.

* To this rule belong verbal adjectives in ax; as, *căpax, ĕdax, fĕrax, tĕnax*; also certain participial adjectives in *ns* and *tus*; as, *amans, appĕtens, insŏlens, sciens*; *cansultus, doctus, expertus, insŏlitus, insuetus.*

To this rule also pertain adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, ignorance, doubting, guilt, innocence, care, diligence, fear, confidence.*

To these are added many adjectives in various significations; as, *æger, integer, audax, fessus, ingens, egrĕgius, lætus*, &c. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *Jure consultus et peritus*, or *juris*; *Assuetus labore, in omnia.* Liv. *mensæ herili.* Virg.

† Some of these adjectives are construed with the genitive only; as, *benignus, exsors, impos, impŏtens, irritus, liberālis, munĭficus, prælargus*; and *compos, indigus, consors, ĕgēnus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, parcus, pauper, prodĭgus, sterĭlis*, most usually with the genitive.

With the ablative only; *beātus, differtus, frugĭfer, mutĭlus, tentus, distentus, tumĭdus, turgĭdus, vacuus*, and *viduus.*

These are most frequently construed with the ablative; *cassus, fœtus, frĕquens, grăvis, grăvĭdus, jejūnus, liber, locŭples, nūdus, orbus*, &c.

Others govern promiscuously either the genitive or ablative; as, *cŏpiōsus, dīves, fœcundus, fĕrax, immūnis, inānis, plēnus*, &c.

‡ Adjectives are called *partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*. Partitives,

Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romŭlus.	*Romulus was the first of the Roman kings.*
Aliquis philosophorum.	*Some one of the philosophers.*

8. Sum, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ;* as,

Est stulti dicere non putaveram.	*It is the part of a fool to say, I had not thought.*

9. Verbs of esteeming govern an accusative of the thing esteemed, and a genitive of the value,† as,

Æstimo te magni.	*I value you much.*

10. Rĕmĭniscor,

Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive, which they have after them in the genitive; but, when there are two substantives of different genders, the *partitive*, &c. commonly agrees with the former; as, *Indus flŭminum maximus:* rarely with the latter; as, *Delphīnus ănimalium vēlōcissimum.* Plin.

Partitives, &c. are often construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex, a, ab, in;* as, *unus de fratribus:* and by the poets, with *ante* and *inter;* as, *pulcherrimus ante omnes,* for *omnium; primus inter omnes.* Virg.

Partitives, &c. may govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and then they are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis. Ultimos orbis Britannos.* Hor.

Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; superlatives, when we speak of more than two; as, major fratrum, *the elder of the brothers,* meaning *two;* maximus fratrum, *the eldest of the brothers,* more than *two.*

* Some substantive may be supposed to be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus,* &c. or the preceding substantive may be repeated.

These possessive pronouns, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum,* are used in the neuter gender, instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.* Other possessives are also construed in the same manner; as, *est regium,* the same with *est regis; est humanum,* i. e. *est hominis.*

We say, *hoc est tuum munus,* or *tui muneris:* so *mos est,* or *moris,* or *in more.* Cic.

† Verbs of *esteeming* or *valuing* are *æstimo, exīstimo, dūco, făcio, hăbeo, pendo, pŭto, lĭceo,* &c. They govern these genitives, *magni, parvi, nĭhĭli, tanti, quanti, plūris, mājōris, mĭnōris, minūmi, plūrĭmi, maxĭmi, pauci, pĭli, assis, tĕruncii, hujus,* &c.

Æstimo sometimes governs the ablative; as, *æstimo te magno.* Æqui and boni are put in the genitive after făcio and consŭlo; as, hoc consŭlo boni, æqui bonique făcio, *I take this in good part.*

10. Rĕmĭnĭscor, oblīvĭscor, mĕmĭni, and rĕcordor govern the genitive, and ſometimes the accuſative ;* as,

Deus ipſe jubet te *meminiſſe mortis.* — *God himſelf commands you to remember death.*

11. Sătăgo, mĭsĕreor, and mĭsĕreſco govern the genitive ;† as,

Mĭsĕrēre civium tuorum. — *Pity your countrymen.*

12. Verbs of accuſing, condemning, acquitting, and admoniſhing, govern the accuſative of a perſon with the genitive of a thing ;‡ as,

Meipſum inertiæ condemno. — *I condemn myſelf of lazineſs.*

13. Intereſt and refert govern the genitive ; as,

Refert omnium. — *It concerns all.*

14. But *mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, veſtra,* and *cuja,* placed with intereſt and refert, are put in the ablative ſingular feminine ‖ as,

Intereſt tua diligenter ſtudere. — *It concerns you to ſtudy diligently.*

15. Theſe

---

* Mĕmĭni and rĕcordor, when they ſignify *to make mention of,* or *concerning,* have frequently an ablative with the prepoſition *de ;* as, De quibus multi meminērunt, *concerning which many have made mention.*

† Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek conſtruction, particularly ſuch as ſignify ſome affection of the mind ; as, *ango, dēcĭpior, dēsĭpio, discrŭcior, excrŭcio, fallo, fallor, faſtīdio, ſtŭdeo, invīdeo, lætor, mīror, pendeo, vĕreor, abſtĭneo, dēsino, dēſiſto, quieſco, regno, ădĭpiſcor, condīco, fruſtror ;* as, *Abſtĭnēto irarum ; dēſine querelarum.*

‡ Verbs of *accuſing* and *admoniſhing,* inſtead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the prepoſition *de ;* as, *Monere aliquem officii,* or *de officio :* ſometimes the ablative, without a prepoſition.

Many verbs of accuſing, &c. are not conſtrued with the accuſative of a perſon, and the genitive of a thing, but the contrary ; as *Accusāre inertiam ădŏleſcentium,* for *ădŏleſcentes inertiæ.*

‖ Some ſuppoſe theſe poſſeſſive pronouns agree with *re* in the abl. ſingular ; others ſuppoſe they are in the accuſative plur. neut.

15. Theſe impersonals, pœnĭtet, tædet, mĭsĕret, mĭsĕrescit, pŭdet, and pĭget govern the accuſative of a perſon, and the genitive of a thing; * as,

Miſeret me tui.	*I pity you.*
Pudet me culpæ.	*I am aſhamed of my fault.*

16. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, with *inſtar* † and *ergo*, govern the genitive; as,

Nuſquam loci. Ubĭque gentium. Inſtar montis. Ergo virtutis.	*In no place. Every where. Like a mountain. For the ſake of virtue.*

SECTION III.

Dative caſe after adjectives,—verbs, interjections, &c.

1. ADJECTIVES ſignifying profit or diſprofit, likeneſs or unlikeneſs, &c. govern the dative; ‡ as,

Utilis

---

* We ſometimes find *mĭsĕret* joined with two accuſatives; as, *Me nĕdĕmi vĭcem mĭsĕret me.* Ter. Here *vĭcem* may be governed by quoad or propter.

The preterites of *mĭsĕret, pŭdet, tædet,* and *pĭget,* when uſed in the paſſive form, govern the ſame caſes as in the active; as, *Misĕrĭtum eſt me tuarum fortunarum.* Ter.

† *Inſtar* and *ergo* are nouns, when they govern the genitive. See Part II. Sec. 15. No. 3.

‡ This rule is very extenſive, for the dative caſe may be governed by almoſt any adjective ſignifying relation to a perſon or thing, with the ſign *to* or *for* after it in Engliſh.

To this rule belong adjectives of pleaſure or pain; as, *dulcis, grātus, lætus,—ăcerbus, mŏleſtus:* of friendſhip or hatred; as, *ămīcus, cārus,—aſper, inſeſtus:* of clearneſs or obſcurity; as, *certus, conſpĭcuus,—dŭbius, incertus:* of nearneſs, fitneſs, unfitneſs, eaſe, difficulty, equality, inequality; as, *finĭtĭmus, aptus, ineptus, făcĭlis, grăvis, par, impar.*

To theſe we may add many other adjectives of various ſignifications.

Several

Utilis bello.	*Profitable for war.*
Pernicioſus reipublicæ.	*Hurtful to the commonwealth.*
Nihil eſt tam *ſimile morti* quam ſomnus.	*Nothing is ſo like death as ſleep.*

3. Verbals in *bilis* and *dus*, and all paſſive participles, may govern the dative* as,

Amandus *or* amabilis omnibus.	*To be loved by all.*

3. The

Several adjectives compounded with *con* are to be referred to this rule; as, *cognātus, concŏlor, concors, confinis*; alſo ſome nouns compounded with *con*, uſed as adjectives; as, *commilito, conſervus.*

The following adjectives have ſometimes the dative, and ſometimes the genitive; *ămicus, inĭmīcus, affinis, sĭmilis, communis, par, prŏprius, ſuētĭnus, fidus, conterminus, ſuperſtes, conſcius, aequālis, contrārius, immūnis, adverſus*, and a few others; as, *sĭmilis tibi*, or *tui*; *ſuperſtes patri*, or *patris.*

Adjectives ſignifying uſefulneſs, or fitneſs, and the contrary, have after them the dative, or the accuſative with a prepoſition; as, *ūtilis, inūtilis, aptus, ineptus, idōneus, convĕniens*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid.* Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewiſe conſtrued with prepoſitions.

Audiens is conſtrued with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, *he was obedient to the king*; *Dicto audiens fuit juſſis magiſtratuum.* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes ſunt.* Cic.

In ſuch phraſes as *proprior montem, proximus finem*, the prepoſition *ad* is underſtood.

Idem ſometimes governs the dative; as, *Invītum qui ſervat, idem facit occidenti.* Hor.

But, in proſe, we commonly find, *idem qui, et, ac, atque*; and alſo *ut, cum*; as, *Eſt animus erga te, idem ac fuit.*

Subſtantives have ſometimes a dative after them; as, *Præſidium reis*; *decus amicis.* Hor.

* Uſually having the force of an agent; ſee No. 12.

Paſſive participles are often conſtrued with the prepoſition *a, ab, abs*; as, *Mors Craſſi eſt a multis deſleta.*

The prepoſition *to* in Engliſh is often underſtood; as, *Like his brother.*

Adjectives in *undus*, ſignifying actively, govern the caſe of their verbs.

Both ſubſtantive and adjective nouns are found, in ſome authors, governing the ſame caſe which their verbs govern; as *Domum reditionis ſpe ſublatā.* Cæſar. *Studioſus ădultĕrio.* Plaut. *Aditio hanc. Nactio nos.* See Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 38. But this antiquated phraſeology is not to be imitated.

3. The person or thing, to or for whom or which any thing is, or is done, is the dative after a verb; as,

Non *nōbis* solum *nati sŭmus.* — *We are not born for ourselves only.*

4. Verbs signifying to profit, hurt, favour, assist, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, be angry with, persuade, flatter, please, displease, meet, envy, to be distant, differ, and indulge, govern the dative; as,

Fortūna *fāvet bŏnis.** — *Fortune favours the good.*

5. Verbs signifying to give, [illegible], restore, take away, compare, threaten, forgive, promise, pay, shew, tell, upbraid, deny, and congratulate, govern the accusative with the dative; †as,

Conspĭco Virgilium Homēro. — *I compare Virgil with Homer.*

Erĭpuit me morti. — *He rescued me from death.*

6. Many

---

* *Jŭbeo, jŭvo, lædo,* and *offendo* govern the accusative.

Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, tĭmeo, mĕtuo, formīdo, horreo tibi, de te, and pro te, *I am afraid for you*, or *for your safety*; tĭmeo, horreo te, *or* a te, *I fear*, or *dread you as an enemy.*

Consŭlo, prospĭcio, căveo tibi, *I consult* or *provide for your safety*; consŭlo te, *I ask your advice.*

Fœnĕror and fœnĕro tibi, *I lend you on interest*; abs te, *I borrow.*

Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad* and the accusative. But, sometimes, in the poets, they are construed with the dative; as, *It clāmor cælo*, for *ad cælum.* Virg.

† Verbs of taking away frequently change the dative into the ablative, with the prepositions *a, ab, abs, de, e,* or *ex.*

Also verbs of *receiving, asking,* and of *distance,* govern the ablative with the same prepositions.

Verbs of comparing may have the ablative with the preposition *cum*, or the accusative with *ad.*

Verbs of congratulating are sometimes joined with the dative alone; as, *Grātare sŏrori.* Virg. *Grātŭlari temporibus.* Plin. Sometimes they have, beside the dative, the accusative; and sometimes the ablative, with or without a preposition.

6. Many verbs compounded with theſe prepoſitions, præ, ad, con, ſub, ante, poſt, ob, in, inter, ſuper, govern the dative; as,

Præfer virtutem divitiis.* *Prefer virtue to riches.*

7. Verbs compounded with ſatis, bene, and male govern the dative; as,

Pulchrum eſt *bĕnĕfacere reipublicæ.* *It is commendable to do good for the commonwealth.*

8. The compounds of ſum, excepting poſſum, govern the dative; as,

Mali nec *proſunt ſibi* nec aliis. *Wicked men neither profit themſelves, nor others.*

9. Sum, put for habeo, governs the dative of a perſon;† as,

Eſt mihi liber. *I have a book.*

10. Sum, taken for affĕro, *(to bring)* governs two datives; the one of a perſon, and the other of a thing;‡ as,

Eſt mihi voluptati. *It is,* or *brings, a pleaſure to me.*

11. Theſe

---

* The dative caſe may follow a ſimple verb, depending on the force of ſome of theſe prepoſitions underſtood; as, Jungunt dextram dextræ, *They join hand with* (to) *hand.* Here jungunt is put for *adjunguntur.* So prŏpinquant urbi, for *appropinquant.*

Tranſitive verbs, compounded with *præ, con,* &c. are followed by two caſual words; one in the accuſative, on which there terminates an action paſſing from the ſubject of the verb; and another in the dative, on which the force of the prepoſition falls.

Præeo, præcĕdo, præcurro, prævĕrto, prævĕrtor, præcello, præſtŏlor, anteeo, antecĕdo, præſtringo, and prævĕnio, &c. ſometimes govern that word in the accuſative, on which the force of the prepoſition falls.

† Suppĕtit follows this conſtruction; and alſo deſum, put for cărĕo; as, Divĭtiæ non deſunt ei, cui rerum ſuppĕtit ūſus. Hor. Scil. *Non căret divitiis, qui hăbet ūſum rerum.*

‡ Two datives are alſo put after *hăbeo, do, verto, tribuo, dūco,* and ſome other verbs; as, Dūcitur hŏnori tibi, *it is reckoned an honour to you.*

Obſerve,

11. These datives, mihi, tibi, sibi, and illi, are sometimes inserted only for better sound's sake; as,

Suo *sibi* hunc jugulavit gladio. — *He slew him with his own sword.*

12. That word, which signifies the agent or doer, after verbs signifying passively, is either in the dative case, or in the ablative with the preposition *a*, *ab*, or *abs*; as,

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. — *He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.*

Nulla tuarum *audita mihi* neque *visa* sororum. — *No one of your sisters has been heard nor seen by me.*

13. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Licet nemini peccare.* — *It is lawful for no man to sin.*

These

Observe, that instead of the dative, we often use the nominative or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pĕcori*, for *exitio*.

When *do* and other active verbs have two datives, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, i. e. *id*.

The dative of the person is often understood; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. i. e. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, &c.

To this rule belong verbs of naming; as, Est mihi nomen Johanni, *my name is John*. The nom. may be used with the dative; as, *Est mihi nomen* Johannes; rarely the genitive; as, *Est mihi nomen* Johannis.

* To this rule belong *accidit, běnĕfit, compĕtit, conducit, confert, constat, contingit, convĕnit, displicet, dŏlet, evĕnit, expedit, libet, licet, liquet, malĕfit, nŏcet, obest, pŏtest, placet, præstat, prodest, restat, sătisfit, stat, sufficit, supĕrest, văcat*.

Verbs, which in the active voice govern the dative only, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as, Favetur mihi, *I am favoured*; not *ego faveor*. In like manner, *nŏcetur mihi, imperatur mihi*. Yet we find, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; cur ego invidear*, for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*. Hor.

These verbs, *pŏtest, cæpit, incipit, desinit, dĕbet*, and *sŏlet*, are used impersonally, when they are joined with impersonal verbs; as, Non pŏtest crĕdi tibi, *you cannot be believed. Negat jucunde posse vivi sine virtute*. Cic. *Sacerdotem insitiæ pudere debet*.

An impersonal verb of the passive voice, governing the dative, or the ablative with a preposition, of the agent or doer, may be rendered in English as a personal, and as if the dative or ablative were the nominative

14. These interjections, hei and væ, govern the dative ; as,

Væ misero *mihi*, quantâ de spe decidi! — *Wretched man that I am, from how great hope am I fallen!*

SECTION IV.

The accusative case after verbs active, passive, neuter, impersonal, exosus, perosus; interjections. The vocative after interjections.

1. A VERB signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

Beneficia *parant amicos*. — *Benefits procure friends.*

2. Verbs of asking and teaching, with celo, govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ;* as,

Deum posce veniam. — *Ask favour from God.*

Ea ne *me celat*. — *Let him not conceal these things from me.*

3. The

---

nominative in Latin; as Scribitur mihi, *or* a me, *I write:* scribitur ab illis, *they write.*

Many verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re*, or *hujus rei*, i. e. *memoria.* This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re.*

The dative case with impersonal verbs is frequently understood; as, *Faciat quodlibet*, i. e. *sibi.* Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, i. e. *mihi.* Virg.

The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs, in English; as, *It becomes; it rains; it shines.*

And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence, which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative.

The distinction, however, of impersonal verbs in Latin is proper, as they do not, like other verbs, agree or connect with the personal pronouns.

* Verbs of asking and teaching sometimes change one of the accusatives into the ablative with a preposition; as, *Veniam oremus ab eo.*

3. The paſſives of theſe verbs, and of verbs of clothing, govern the accuſative of a thing;* as,

Rogabatur ſententiam. *He was aſked his opinion.*

4. Neuter verbs may govern the accuſative, when the noun after them has a ſignification ſimilar to their own,† as,

Ire iter or *viam*. *To go a journey.*
Vivere vitam. *To live a life.*

5. An accuſative caſe, uſed by a figure‡ for an adverb, may follow a verb neuter; as,

Nec vox *hominem* (i. e. humanitus) ſonat, O dea! certe. *Nor does your voice ſound with human accents, O, a goddeſs! certainly.*

Bacchanalia (i. e. bacchanaliter) vivunt. *They live as at bacchanals.*

6. Exoſus, peroſus, and pertæſus, ſignifying actively, govern the accuſative; but ſignifying paſſively, the dative, as,

Exoſus, ad unam, *mulieres*. *Hating women in general.*
Pertæſa immundam *ſegnitiem*. *Utterly hating ſhameful idleneſs.*
Exoſus Deo et ſanctis. *Hated by God and the ſaints.*

7. Theſe

---

* *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, alſo *exuor* and *diſcingor*, are often conſtrued with the accuſative, particularly by the poets, though we do not find them governing two accuſatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur veſtem*, or *veſte*.

Paſſive verbs govern the ſame caſes with their actives, unleſs the accuſative, which (except this of a thing with verbs of *aſking*, &c.) after paſſive verbs, is always governed by ſome prepoſition underſtood, by a ſynecdoche. See Sect. X. No. 11. Note ||, 8.

† This accuſative is ſometimes changed into the ablative; as, Obiit repentinâ morte, *he died a ſudden death. Ire rectâ viâ.*

‡ See Section X. No 10.

The verb, which governs an accuſative, is often underſtood; as, *Quid multa?* i. e. *quid dicam* or *dicerem multa? Nec plura*, i. e. *nec plura dixit.*

|| Having the force of an agent. See Sect. III. No 2. alſo number 12.

7. These impersonals, decet, delectat, juvat, and oportet, with their compounds, govern the accusative of a person, and the infinitive mode;* as,

Uxorem ædes curare decet. *It becomes a wife to take care of the house.*

8. The interjections, en, ecce, and hem govern the nominative or the accusative;† as,

En quatuor *aras.* *Behold four altars.*

9. Heus and Ohe govern the vocative; as also do O, heu, and proh,‖ which sometimes have the nominative or the accusative; as,

Heu! miserande *puer.* *Oh! youth much to be lamented.*

10. Ah and vah govern the vocative, and sometimes the accusative; as,

Ah virgo infelix. *O unhappy virgin.*

SECTION

---

* *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet.* Ter.

Oportet is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as, *Sibi quisque consulat oportet.* Cic. *Fallit, fugit, prætérit,* and *latet,* when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive.

Attinet, pertinet, and *spectat* are construed with *ad*; as, *Ad rempublicam pertinet me confervari.* Cic. They are thus construed, when used personally.

† When *en* and *ecce* signify to reproach, they govern the accusative only; as, En habitum, *what a wretched dress!*

‖ Proh is sometimes written pro.

Amo virginem de-
quantis skein an mente
& intellingere

SECTION V.

The ablative case signifying the instrument, cause, &c. diversity. A part or member of any thing affected in that part. Of the ablative case governed by the comparative degree, when quam is left out in Latin: signifying measure or distance, &c. price, the time when. Dignus, indignus, &c.—opus and usus.—The ablative case after verbs of abounding and wanting, filling and emptying; potior, fungor, &c. mereor with benè and malè.

1. THE instrument, cause, mean, and manner are put in the ablative case;* as,

Palleo metu. Scribo calămo.	*I am pale for fear. I write with a pen.*

2. Adjectives signifying diversity govern either the ablative with a preposition, or the dative; as,

Alter ab illo. Diversus huic.	*One different from him. Different from this man.*

3. A noun signifying a part or member of any thing, any way affected in that part, may be put in the ablative, as,

Crine niger.	*He is black in his hair.*
Ruber ore.	*He is red in his face.*

4. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative, when *quam* is left out in Latin;† as,

Natura

---

* *With*, signifying in company with, is rendered in Latin by the prepositon *cum*.

The ablative is sometimes used to express *respect wherein*; as, Excellunt virtute, *they excel in virtue*, or *courage*.

A preposition is often expressed with the *cause* and *manner*, and, sometimes, with the *instrument*; as, Bacchāris præ ebrietate, *you rage through drunkenness*. Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

The *instrument* may be known by the question *with which*, or *what?* the *cause*, by the question *why?* And the *mean* has the word *by* or *with* before it.

† When *than* is expressed in Latin by *quam*, *ac*, *atque*, &c. the noun following is put in the same case with the preceding noun, to which it

Quid eſt optabilius aut *præſtantius ſapientiâ ?*	*What is more deſirable or more excellent than wiſdom ?*

5. Meaſure or diſtance is put in the accuſative, and ſometimes in the ablative ; as,

Murus eſt decem *pedes* altus.	*The wall is ten feet high.*

6. The exceſs or difference of meaſure and diſtance are put in the ablative ; as,

Sol eſt multis *partibus* major terrâ.	*The ſun is many times bigger than the earth.*
Quanto diutius Simonides Dei naturam conſideravit, *tanto* obſcurior res viſa eſt ei.	*By how much longer Simonides conſidered the nature of God, by ſo much the more difficult the thing ſeemed to him.*

7. The price of a thing is put in the ablative caſe ; as,

Perfidi vendunt patriam *auro.*	*Perfidious men ſell their country for gold.*

8. Nouns ſignifying the time *when* are put in the ablative, and thoſe, *how long*, in the accuſative ; as,

Quando

---

it is coupled. *Quam* may be elegantly ſuppreſſed after theſe comparatives, *plus, amplius, minus*, without theſe ablatives; as, Noctem non amplius unam falle dolo.

* By meaſure we are to underſtand the *length, breadth, height*, and *depth, of a thing.*

The meaſure of things in the plural number is rarely expreſſed in the genitive; as, *Muri ſunt denos pedes alti*, and ſometimes *denûm pedum.*

† *Tanto, quanto, multo* are joined to the ſuperlative as well as comparative degree.

‡ Theſe genitives, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, majōris, tantīdem, quantilĭbet, quantīcunque, quantīvis*, ſignifying the price, when they have no ſubſtantive joined with them, are put in the genitive; but, when their ſubſtantives are expreſſed, they are in the ablative.

Magno, permagno, parvo, paulŭlo, minīmo, plurimo, &c. are often uſed without the ſubſtantive; as, *Permagno conſtĭtit*, i. e. *pretio.* Cic.

Valeo, *to be worth*, ſometimes governs the accuſative; as, Dēnārii dicti, quod dēnos æris valēbant, *they were called dēnārii, becauſe they were worth ten pieces of braſs.*

‖ Sometimes in the ablative. Such phraſes as theſe occur; In paucis diebus, *within a few days*; De die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; commŏdo in *or* ad menſem, *I lend for a month.*

Quando rediisti? Heſterno die. *When did you return? Yeſterday.*

Quamdiu manſiſti? Sex dies. *How long did you tarry? Six days.*

9. Dignus, indignus, prædĭtus; alſo natus, ſatus, ortus, editus, and the like, govern the ablative;* as,

Dignus honore. Captus oculis. *Worthy of honour. Blind.*

10. Opus and uſus, ſignifying need, require the ablative, and ſometimes the genitive;† as,

Eſt *opus pecuniâ.* *There is need of money.*

Uſus eſt *operæ tuæ.* *There is need of your aſſiſtance.*

11. Verbs of abounding and wanting govern the ablative, and ſometimes the genitive;‡ as,

Abundat divitiis. *He abounds in riches.*

Eget æris. *He wants money.*

12. Verbs of loading, binding, freeing, depriving, and ſome others, govern the accuſative and the ablative;‖ as,

Onerant naves mercibus. *They load the ſhips with ware.*

Liberavit nos metu. *He delivered us from fear.*

13. Potior,

---

* *Contentus, frĕtus, extorris, prŏfŭgus, lætus, ſŭperbus, captus, creatus, genĭtus, gĕnĕratus, prōcreatus,* &c. belong to this rule. *Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus* have ſometimes the genitive after them; as, *Dignus avorum.* Virg. Alſo *captus* and *extorris,* according to grammarians.

† Opus is ſometimes an adjective undeclined; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus eſt.* The dative caſe, joined in ſentences with *opus* and *uſus,* is governed by the verb ſum, according to Sect. iii. No. 9.

‡ *Careo* and *egeo* anciently governed the accuſative; as, *Multa careo.* Cat. The genitive after verbs of *abounding* and *wanting* may be ſuppoſed to be governed by ſome ablative underſtood.

‖ The ablative of the thing *loaded with,* &c. and the accuſative of the perſon or thing *loaded, bound,* &c.

13. Potior, fungor, fruor, utor, and vescor govern the ablative *, as,

Fruĕre Deo.	*Enjoy God.*
Utĭtur fraude.	*He practises deceit.*

14. Muto and its compounds usually govern the accusative of a thing changed, and the ablative of that for which it is changed: but sometimes the reverse †; as,

Mutat quadrata rotundis.	*He exchanges square things for round.*

15. Mereor, with these adverbs, benè, malè, melius, pejus, optimè, pessimè, requires the ablative with the preposition *de*, as,

De me nunquam *bene meritus es.*	*You never deserved well of me.*

SECTION

---

* *Nascor, defungor, abūtor, gaudeo, exulto, glĭorior, lætor, nītor, vivo, vĭvito, fio, consto, pascor, vescor, epŭlor*, and *supersĕdeo* follow this construction.

Potior frequently governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis.*

Pŏtior, fungor, ūtor, vescor, and *pascor* sometimes have the accusative.

Dēpasco and *dēpascor* always take the accusative.

† *Dignor, impertio, impertior, mūnĕro, communĭco, partĭcipo, dōno, prosĕquor*, and *affĭcio* govern the accusative of a person, and the ablative of a thing; as, Haud equidem tali me dignor honore, *truly I do not think myself worthy of such honour.* Communĭcābo te semper mensâ meâ, *I will give you access always to my table.*

Partĭcipo sometimes governs the accusative of a person, and the genitive of a thing; as, Paternum servum sui participat consilii, *he acquaints his father's servant with his design.*

Dōno also governs the accusative of a thing, and the dative of a person, according to Section III. No. 5.

‡ *Mĕreor* sometimes requires the ablative with *de*, without these adverbs.

SECTION VI.

The proper name of a town ſignifying the place whither; from which; where, &c. The ablative abſolute. The infinitive mode.

1. THE proper name of a town, ſignifying the place *whither*, is put in the accuſative;* as,

Profectus eſt *Athēnas*. *He went to Athens.*

2. The proper name of a town, ſignifying *from which* or *whence*, is put in the ablative; as,

Venit *Româ*. *He came from Rome.*

3. The proper name of a town, ſignifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if of the firſt or ſecond declenſion, and ſingular number, is put in the genitive; but, if it be of the third or fourth declenſion, or plural number, it is put in the ablative;† as,

Vixit *Romæ*. *He lived at Rome.*
Studuit Athenis. *He ſtudied at Athens.*

N. B. *Domus* and *rus*, alſo theſe genitive nouns, *militiæ*, *humi*, and *belli*, ſignifying the place *where*, follow the conſtruction of proper names.

4. A

---

* The dative is ſometimes uſed by the poets; as, *Carthaginī nuncios mittam.* Hor.

The names of other places, as *countries*, *provinces*, *mountains*, *rivers*, *temples*, &c. are not to be referred to the three firſt rules of this Section, but are governed by prepoſitions; as, E Cilicia decedens, Rhodum veni, *departing from Cilicia, I came to Rhodes.* Ad templum ibant, *they went to the temple.*

† *At*, ſignifying *near*, or *about* a place, is made in Latin by *ad* or *apud*, with the accuſative; as, *Bellum quod geſſerat ad Trojam.*

When motion *by* or *through* a place is ſignified, the ablative is ſometimes uſed; but the prepoſition *per* with the accuſative is more uſual.

When the name of a town is put in the genitive, agreeably to this rule, *in urbe* or *oppido* is underſtood; therefore, we cannot ſay, Natus eſt Romæ, *nobilis urbis*, but *nobili urbe.*

A prepoſition

6. Many verbs compounded with these prepositions, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, super, govern the dative; as,

Præfer virtutem divitiis.* *Prefer virtue to riches.*

7. Verbs compounded with satis, bene, and male govern the dative; as,

Pulchrum est *bĕnĕfacere reipublicæ.* *It is commendable to do good for the commonwealth.*

8. The compounds of sum, excepting possum, govern the dative; as,

Mali nec *prosunt sibi* nec aliis. *Wicked men neither profit themselves, nor others.*

9. Sum, put for habeo, governs the dative of a person;† as,

Est mihi liber. *I have a book.*

10. Sum, taken for affĕro, *(to bring)* governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing;‡ as,

Est mihi voluptati. *It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.*

11. These

---

* The dative case may follow a simple verb, depending on the force of some of these prepositions understood; as, Jungunt dextram dextræ, *They join hand with* (to) *hand.* Here jungunt is put for *adjungunt.* So propinquant urbi, for *appropinquant.*

Transitive verbs, compounded with *præ, con,* &c. are followed by two casual words; one in the accusative, on which there terminates an action passing from the subject of the verb; and another in the dative, on which the force of the preposition falls.

Præeo, præcēdo, præcurro, præverto, prævertor, præcello, præstŏlor, anteeo, antecēdo, præstringo, and prævĕnio, &c. sometimes govern that word in the accusative, on which the force of the preposition falls.

† Suppĕtit follows this construction; and also desum, put for cărĕo; as, Divĭtiæ non desunt ei, cui rerum suppĕtit usus. Hor. Scil. *Non căret divitiis, qui hăbet usum rerum.*

‡ Two datives are also put after *hăbeo, do, verto, tribuo, dūco,* and some other verbs; as, Dūcitur hŏnori tibi, *it is reckoned an honour to you.*

Observe,

11. These datives, mihi, tibi, sibi, and illi, are sometimes inserted only for better sound's sake, as,

Suo *sibi* hunc jugulavit gladio.	*He slew him with his own sword.*

12. That word, which signifies the agent or doer, after verbs signifying passively, is either in the dative case, or in the ablative with the preposition *a*, *ab*, or *abs*; as,

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.	*He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.*
Nulla tuarum *audita mihi* neque *visa* sororum.	*No one of your sisters has been heard nor seen by me.*

13. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Licet nemini peccare.*	*It is lawful for no man to sin.*

These

Observe, that instead of the dative, we often use the nominative or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio*.

When *do* and other active verbs have two datives, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, i. e. *id*.

The dative of the person is often understood; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. i. e. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, &c.

To this rule belong verbs of naming; as, Est mihi nomen Johanni, *my name is John*. The nom. may be used with the dative; as, *Est mihi nomen* Johannes; rarely the genitive; as, *Est mihi nomen* Johannis.

* To this rule belong *accidit, contigit, convenit, displicet, dolet, evenit, expedit, libet, licet, liquet, malefit, nocet, obest, potest, placet, præstat, prodest, restat, satisfit, stat, juvat, vacat*.

Verbs, which in the active voice govern the dative only, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as, Favetur mihi, *I am favoured*; not *ego faveor*. In like manner, *noctur mihi, imperatur mihi*. Yet we find, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; cur ego invideor*, for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*. Hor.

These verbs, *potest, cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when they are joined with impersonal verbs; as, Non potest credi tibi, *you cannot be believed*. *Negat jucunda posse vivi sine virtute* Cic. *Sacerdotem inscitiæ pudere debet*.

An impersonal verb of the passive voice, governing the dative, or the ablative with a preposition, of the agent or doer, may be rendered in English as a personal, and as if the dative or ablative were the nominative

14. These interjections, hei and væ, govern the dative ; as,

Væ misero *mihi*, quanta de spe decidi ! — *Wretched man that I am, from how great hope am I fallen!*

SECTION IV.

The accusative case after verbs active, passive, neuter, impersonal, exosus, perosus ; interjections. The vocative after interjections.

1. A VERB signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

Beneficia *parant amicos.* — *Benefits procure friends.*

2. Verbs of asking and teaching, with celo, govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as,

Deum posce veniam. — *Ask favour from God.*
Ea ne *me celat.* — *Let him not conceal these things from me.*

3. The

---

nominative in Latin ; as Scribitur mihi, *or* a me, *I write:* scribitur ab illis, *they write.*

Many verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hac res*, or *de hac re*, or *hujus rei*, i. e. *memoria.* This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mihi hac res*, or *de hac re.*

The dative case with impersonal verbs is frequently understood ; as, *Faciat quodlibet*, i. e. *sibi.* Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, i. e. *mihi.* Virg.

The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, *It becomes ; it rains ; it shines.*

And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence, which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative.

The distinction, however, of impersonal verbs in Latin is proper, as they do not, like other verbs, agree or connect with the personal pronouns.

* Verbs of asking and teaching sometimes change one of the accusatives into the ablative with a preposition ; as, *Veniam oramus ab eo.*

3. The paſſives of theſe verbs, and of verbs of clothing, govern the accuſative of a thing;* as,

Rogabatur ſententiam.	*He was aſked his opinion.*

4. Neuter verbs may govern the accuſative, when the noun after them has a ſignification ſimilar to their own; as,

Ire iter or *viam.*	*To go a journey.*
Vivere vitam.	*To live a life.*

5. An accuſative caſe, uſed by a figure† for an adverb, may follow a verb neuter; as,

Nec vox *hominem* (i. e. humanitus) ſonat, O dea! certe.	*Nor does your voice ſound with human accents, O, a goddeſs! certainly.*
Bacchanalia (i. e. bacchanaliter) vivunt.	*They live as at bacchanals.*

6. Exoſus, peroſus, and pertæſus, ſignifying actively, govern the accuſative; but ſignifying paſſively, the dative; as,

Exoſus, ad unam, *mulieres.*	*Hating women in general.*
Pertæſa immundam *ſegnitiem.*	*Utterly hating ſhameful idleneſs.*
Exoſus Deo et ſanctis.	*Hated by God and the ſaints.*

7. Theſe

---

* *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, alſo *exuor* and *diſcingor*, are often conſtrued with the accuſative, particularly by the poets, though we do not find them governing two accuſatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur veſtem*, or *veſte.*

Paſſive verbs govern the ſame caſes with their actives, unleſs the accuſative, which (except this of a thing with verbs of *aſking*, &c.) after paſſive verbs, is always governed by ſome prepoſition underſtood, by a ſynecdoche. See Sect. X. No. 11. Note ‖, 8.

† This accuſative is ſometimes changed into the ablative; as, Obiit repentinâ morte, *he died a ſudden death. Ire rectâ viâ.*

‡ See Section X. No 10.

The verb, which governs an accuſative, is often underſtood; as, *Quid multa?* i. e. *quid dicam* or *dicerem multa? Nec plura*, i. e. *nec plura dixit.*

‖ Having the force of an agent. See Sect. III. No 2. alſo number 12.

7. Theſe impersonals, decet, delectat, juvat, and oportet, with their compounds, govern the accuſative of a perſon, and the infinitive mode; as,

Uxorem ædes curare decet. *It becomes a wife to take care of the houſe.*

8. The interjections, en, ecce, and hem govern the nominative or the accuſative;† as,

En quatuor *aras.* *Behold four altars.*

9. Heus and Ohe govern the vocative; as alſo do O, heu, and proh,‖ which ſometimes have the nominative or the accuſative; as,

Heu! miſerande *puer.* *Oh! youth much to be lamented.*

10. Ah and vah govern the vocative, and ſometimes the accuſative; as,

Ah virgo infelix. *O unhappy virgin.*

SECTION

---

* *Decet* is ſometimes conſtrued with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet.* Ter.

Oportet is elegantly joined with the ſubjunctive mode, *ut* being underſtood; as, *Sibi quiſque conſulat oportet.* Cic. *Fallit, fugit, prætĕrit,* and *latet,* when uſed impersonally, alſo govern the accuſative with the infinitive.

Attinet, pertinet, and *ſpectat* are conſtrued with *ad*; as, *Ad rempublicam pertinet me conſervari.* Cic. They are thus conſtrued, when uſed perſonally.

† When *en* and *ecce* ſignify to reproach, they govern the accuſative only; as, En habitum, *what a wretched dreſs!*

‖ Proh is ſometimes written pro.

Amo virginem de-
gantissimam mente
et intellectu

SECTION V.

The ablative case signifying the instrument, cause, &c. diversity. A part or member of any thing affected in that part. Of the ablative case governed by the comparative degree, when quam is left out in Latin: signifying measure or distance, &c. price, the time when. Dignus, indignus, &c.—opus and usus.—The ablative case after verbs of abounding and wanting, filling and emptying; potior, fungor, &c. mereor with benè and malè.

1. THE instrument, cause, mean, and manner are put in the ablative case;* as,

Palleo metu. Scribo calămo.	*I am pale for fear. I write with a pen.*

2. Adjectives signifying diversity govern either the ablative with a prepositon, or the dative; as,

Alter ab illo. Diversus huic.	*One different from him. Different from this man.*

3. A noun signifying a part or member of any thing, any way affected in that part, may be put in the ablative, as,

Crine niger.	*He is black in his hair.*
Ruber ore.	*He is red in his face.*

4. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative, when *quam* is left out in Latin;† as,

Natura

---

* *With*, signifying in company with, is rendered in Latin by the prepositon *cum*.

The ablative is sometimes used to express *respect wherein*; as, Excellunt virtute, *they excel in virtue*, or *courage*.

A prepositon is often expressed with the *cause* and *manner*, and, sometimes, with the *instrument*; as, Bacchāris præ ebrietate, *you rage through drunkenness*. Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

The *instrument* may be known by the question *with which*, or *what?* the *cause*, by the question *why?* And the *mean* has the word *by* or *with* before it.

† When *than* is expressed in Latin by *quam*, *ac*, *atque*, &c. the noun following is put in the same case with the preceding noun, to which it

Quid est optabilius aut *præstantius sapientiâ ?* — *What is more desirable or more excellent than wisdom ?*

5. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative ; as,

Murus est decem *pedes* altus. — *The wall is ten feet high.*

6. The excess or difference of measure and distance are put in the ablative ; as,

Sol est multis *partibus* major terrâ. — *The sun is many times bigger than the earth.*

Quanto diutius Simonides Dei naturam consideravit, *tanto* obscurior res visa est ei. — *By how much longer Simonides considered the nature of God, by so much the more difficult the thing seemed to him.*

7. The price of a thing is put in the ablative case ; as,

Perfidi vendunt patriam *auro.* — *Perfidious men sell their country for gold.*

8. Nouns signifying the time *when* are put in the ablative, and those, *how long*, in the accusative ; as,

Quando

---

it is coupled. *Quam* may be elegantly suppressed after these comparatives, *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, without these ablatives; as, Noctem non amplius unam falle dolo.

* By measure we are to understand the *length*, *breadth*, *height*, and *depth*, *of a thing.*

The measure of things in the plural number is rarely expressed in the genitive; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denûm pedum.*

† *Tanto*, *quanto*, *multo* are joined to the superlative as well as comparative degree.

‡ These genitives, *tanti*, *quanti*, *plūris*, *minōris*, *majōris*, *tantīdem*, *quantilibet*, *quantīcunque*, *quantāvis*, signifying the price, when they have no substantive joined with them, are put in the genitive; but, when their substantives are expressed, they are in the ablative.

Magno, *permagno*, *parvo*, *paulūlo*, *minimo*, *plurimo*, &c. are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constītit*, i. e. *pretio.* Cic.

Valeo, *to be worth*, sometimes governs the accusative; as, Dēnārii dicti, quod dēnos æris valēbant, *they were called dēnārii, because they were worth ten pieces of brass.*

‖ Sometimes in the ablative. Such phrases as these occur; In paucis diebus, *within a few days*; De die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; commŏdo in *or* ad mensem, *I lend for a month.*

Quando rediisti? Hesterno die. *When did you return? Yesterday.*

Quamdiu mansisti? Sex dies. *How long did you tarry? Six days.*

9. Dignus, indignus, prædĭtus; also natus, satus, ortus, editus, and the like, govern the ablative;* as,

Dignus honore. Captus oculis. *Worthy of honour. Blind.*

10. Opus and usus, signifying need, require the ablative, and sometimes the genitive;† as,

Est *opus pecuniâ.* *There is need of money.*
Usus est *operæ tuæ.* *There is need of your assistance.*

11. Verbs of abounding and wanting govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive;‡ as,

Abundat divitiis. *He abounds in riches.*
Eget æris. *He wants money.*

12. Verbs of loading, binding, freeing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative;‖ as,

Onerant naves mercibus. *They load the ships with ware.*
Liberavit nos metu. *He delivered us from fear.*

13. Potior,

---

* *Contentus, frētus, extorris, prŏfŭgus, lætus, sŭperbus, captus, creatus, genĭtus, gĕnĕratus, prōcreatus,* &c. belong to this rule. *Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus* have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *Dignus avorum.* Virg. Also *captus* and *extorris,* according to grammarians.

† Opus is sometimes an adjective undeclined; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* The dative case, joined in sentences with *opus* and *usus,* is governed by the verb sum, according to Sect. iii. No. 9.

‡ *Careo* and *egeo* anciently governed the accusative; as, *Multa careo.* Cat. The genitive after verbs of *abounding* and *wanting* may be supposed to be governed by some ablative understood.

‖ The ablative of the thing *loaded with,* &c. and the accusative of the person or thing *loaded, bound,* &c.

13. Potior, fungor, fruor, utor, and vescor govern the ablative *; as,

Fruĕre Deo.	*Enjoy God.*
Utĭtur fraude.	*He practises deceit.*

14. Muto and its compounds usually govern the accusative of a thing changed, and the ablative of that for which it is changed: but sometimes the reverse †; as,

Mutat quadrata rotundis.	*He exchanges square things for round.*

15. Mereor, with these adverbs, benè, malè, melius, pejus, optimè, pessimè, requires the ablative with the preposition *de*; as,

De me nunquam *bene meritus es.*	*You never deserved well of me.*

SECTION

---

* *Nascor, defungor, abūtor, gaudeo, exulto, glŏrior, lætor, nītor, vīvo, vĭvĭto, fio, consto, pascor, vescor, epŭlor*, and *suppĕdĕo* follow this construction.

Potior frequently governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis.*

Potior, fungor, ūtor, vescor, and *pascor* sometimes have the accusative.

Dēpasco and *dēpascor* always take the accusative.

† *Dignor, impertio, impertior, mūnĕro, communĭco, partĭcĭpo, dōno, prōsĕquor*, and *afficio* govern the accusative of a person, and the ablative of a thing; as, Haud equidem tali me dignor honore, *truly I do not think myself worthy of such honour.* Communĭcābo te semper mensâ meâ, *I will give you access always to my table.*

Partĭcĭpo sometimes governs the accusative of a person, and the genitive of a thing; as, Paternum servum sui participat consilii, *he acquaints his father's servant with his design.*

Dōno also governs the accusative of a thing, and the dative of a person, according to Section III. No. 5.

‡ *Mĕreor* sometimes requires the ablative with *de*, without these adverbs.

SECTION VI.

The proper name of a town signifying the place whither; from which; where, &c. The ablative absolute. The infinitive mode.

1. THE proper name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative;* as,

Profectus est *Athēnas*. *He went to Athens.*

2. The proper name of a town, signifying *from which* or *whence*, is put in the ablative; as,

Venit Româ. *He came from Rome.*

3. The proper name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; but, if it be of the third or fourth declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative;† as,

Vixit Romæ. *He lived at Rome.*
Studuit Athenis. *He studied at Athens.*

N. B. *Domus* and *rus*, also these genitive nouns, *militiæ*, *humi*, and *belli*, signifying the place *where*, follow the construction of proper names.

4. A

---

* The dative is sometimes used by the poets; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam.* Hor.

The names of other places, as *countries*, *provinces*, *mountains*, *rivers*, *temples*, &c. are not to be referred to the three first rules of this Section, but are governed by prepositions; as, E Cilicia decedens, Rhodum veni, *departing from Cilicia, I came to Rhodes.* Ad templum ibant, *they went to the temple.*

† *At*, signifying *near*, or *about* a place, is made in Latin by *ad* or *apud*, with the accusative; as, *Bellum quod gessērat ad Trojam.*

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the ablative is sometimes used; but the preposition *per* with the accusative is more usual.

When the name of a town is put in the genitive, agreeably to this rule, *in urbe* or *oppido* is understood; therefore, we cannot say, Natus est Romæ, *nobilis urbis*, but *nobili urbe.*

A preposition

4. A ſubſtantive, whether noun or pronoun, joined with a participle expreſſed, or underſtood, when it can be governed by no other word, is put in the ablative abſolute; as,

Libertate patriæ *oppreſſa*, eſt nihil amplius quod ſperēmus.	*The liberty of our country being oppreſſed, there is nothing more that we can hope for.*
Imperante Auguſto, natus eſt Chriſtus; *imperante Tiberio*, crucifixus.	*Chriſt was born, when Auguſtus was emperor; crucified, when Tiberius was emperor.*

5. One verb governs another in the infinitive mode; as,

Cupio audire.	*I deſire to hear.*

6. The infinitive mode is often governed by adjectives † and participles; as,

Contentus vivere in pace.	*Content to live in peace.*
Juſſus confundere fœdus.	*Ordered to violate the treaty.*

7. When

A prepoſition is ſometimes added to names of towns; as, *In Romam; ad Romam; ex Româ.* Peto always governs the accuſative, as an active verb; Petivit Romam, *he went to Rome.*

Names of *countries* and *provinces* are ſometimes conſtrued without prepoſitions, like proper names of towns or cities; as, *Pompeius Cypri viſus eſt.* Cæſ.

* Obſervations reſpecting the ablative abſolute:

1. When there is no participle expreſſed in Latin, *exiſtente* in the ſingular, and *exiſtentibus* in the plural, are often underſtood; as, Civitate nondum libera, i. e. *exiſtente* libera, *the ſtate not yet being free.*

2. *Being* is the proper ſign of the ablative abſolute, when the participle is not of the preſent tenſe, and when *exiſtente* or *exiſtentibus* is not underſtood; as, *Imperatore occiſo, exercitus fugit.*

3. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not uſed with words in the ablative abſolute.

4. *Having*, *after*, and *when* are likewiſe ſigns of the ablative abſolute, when they occur before a tranſitive verb; as, Sic excitatis militibus, bellum intŭlit Romanis, *having thus encouraged his ſoldiers, he made war upon the Romans.* See Clarke's Introduction to the making of Latin, Chap. XXVIII.

† The infinitive mode may depend on a ſubſtantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia ſolvere colla.* Virg.

The infinitive mode may be uſed as a noun, in any caſe. See Section X. No. 10. Note *.

7. When *quod*, *quo*, *ut*, or *ne* is left out in Latin, the word, which otherwise would be the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mode,* as,

Gaudeo *te valere*. — *I rejoice that you are well.*

SECTION VII.

Gerunds; participials in dus, or gerundial adjectives; supines, &c.

1. THOSE adjectives which govern the genitive, and many substantives, have after them the gerund in *di*,† as,

Sum *cupidus discendi*. — *I am desirous of learning.*
Tempus legendi. — *Time of reading.*

2. Gerunds in *di* sometimes elegantly govern the genitive plural; as,

Illorum gratia *videndi*. — *For the sake of seeing them.*

3. The

* Sometimes an infinitive follows the helping verb *am*, in English; which is to be turned into Latin by the participle of the future in *rus*, when it is of the active voice; but by the participle of the future in *dus*, when of the passive; as, He is to go, *profecturus est*. He is to be loved, *amandus est*. But when duty is signified, these may be made by the infinitive, with *oportet*, *debet*, &c.

When the infinitive mode, in English, signifies *to the end that*, it is to be resolved into the subjunctive, in Latin, with *ut*, and sometimes *qui*; or it may be made by the gerund in *dum*, or *a gerundial adjective*; as, Do tibi pecuniam, *ut emas*, or *quâ emas libros*; or *ad emendum*, or *emendos libros*. See Clarke's Introduction to the making of Latin, Chap. XXVII.

† In English, the participle in *ing*, with a preposition before it, retaining the force of its government, answers to the gerund in Latin; as, *Happiness is to be obtained by avoiding evil, and doing good; by seeking peace, and pursuing it.* This participle may be changed into a substantive expressing the action itself, by putting an article before, and the preposition *of* after it; as, *These are the rules of grammar, by the observing of which, you may avoid mistakes.*

3. The gerund in *do* is used as a dative after such adjectives* as signify usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta est *utilis scribendo.* *Paper is useful for writing.*

4. The gerund in *do* is used as an ablative, with a preposition governing the ablative case; as,

Ignavi *a discendo* cito deterrentur. *Idle boys are soon discouraged from learning.*

5. The gerund in *do* is used as an ablative of manner or cause; † as,

Memoria *excolendo* augetur. *The memory is improved by exercising it.*

6. The gerund in *dum* is used as the nominative with the verb *est*, and governs the dative ‡ as,

Legendum est mihi. *I must read.*

7. The gerund in *dum* is used as the accusative after these prepositions, *ad, ob, inter, ante, propter*; as,

Promptus *ad audiendum.* *Ready to hear.*
Inter cænandum hilares este. *Be cheerful at supper.*

8. Gerunds are often changed into participials ‖ in *dus*, and agree with their substantives like adjectives; § as,

Tantus

---

* Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *idoneus*.

† The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive mode. Hence the one is frequently used for the other; as, *Est tempus loquendi*, or *tacere*.

‡ This gerund, thus used, always imports obligation or necessity. The dative is often understood. It is sometimes used as the accusative with esse.

‖ They are also called *gerundial adjectives*, or *gerund voices*.

§ In changing gerunds into *participials in dus*, the participial or gerundial adjective and the substantive are always to be put in the same case, in which the gerund was.

The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into such participials, except those of *vĕdĕor, ūtor, ăbūtor, fruor, fungor*, and *pŏtĭor*.

Tantus amor florum, et generandi gloria mellis. — *So great is their love of flowers, and glory of making honey.*

9. The supine in *um* is put after verbs of motion; § as,

Spectatum veniunt. — *They come to see.*

10. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun ‖ as,

Facile dictu. — *Easy to be told.*

SECTION VIII.

Conjunctions and Adverbs.

1. CONJUNCTIONS couple *like* cases,* modes, and tenses †; as,

Petrus et Johannes precabantur et docebant. — *Peter and John prayed and taught.*

2. Adverbs and conjunctions govern the subjunctive mode, when they give a signification of contingency or uncertainty to the verb.

SECTION

§ The supine in *um* is put after some other verbs, beside those of motion.

‖ The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, rarely governs any case. It is sometimes, especially by old writers, put after verbs of motion.

* Unless the construction of a noun, not having a singular number, &c. should require some other case; as, Vixi Romæ et Athenis, *I have lived at Rome and Athens.*

Que and *ve* are always added to the end of the word they couple. Conjunctions sometimes require like modes, but different tenses; as, *Tibi gratias egi, et te aliquando collaudare possum.*

† Quod, *that*, denotes what is past, and is commonly joined to the indicative; but, ut, *that*, or *although*, denotes what is future, and is joined to the subjunctive.

Ut,

SECTION IX.

Prepositions. Government of Participles, Gerunds, Supines, and Adverbs.

1. THE accusative case* is governed by certain prepositions; as,

Ad astra. Erga amicos. *To the stars. Towards friends.*

2. The

Ut, *after*, or *as soon as*, takes the indicative. Also when used for *quam* or *quŏmŏdo*: or when it simply denotes resemblance.

Ut is elegantly put for *ne*, or *ne non*, with the subjunctive, after *timeo*, *mĕtuo*, *vĕreor*, &c. as, *Mĕtuo ut subsĭet hospes.*

Cum, *when*, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive; oftener with the latter; dum, *whilst*, or *how long*, with the indicative. Dum and donec for *usquĕdum*, *until*, sometimes govern the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive.

The following have sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive, *antĕquam*, *donec*, *etsi*, *tămetsi*, *tĕtsi*, *quanquam*, *licet*, *nisi*, *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *priusquam*, *quam*, *quamdiu*, *quamvis*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *quia*, *quippe*, *qui*, *quod*, (because,) *quoad* (as long as,) *quŏniam*, *si*, (if,) *sicut*, *simul*, *simul ac*, *simul atque*, *simul ut*, *sin*, *siquidem*, *ubi*, *ubicunque*, *utpŏte*, *qui*, *quemadmŏdum*.

Quum almost always requires the subjunctive. Cum, *(although*, or *seeing that,)* requires the subjunctive.

Quoad, *(until,)* has always the subjunctive; as also si, *(although.)*

Ceu, cum, *(although*, or *seeing,)* dummŏdo, *(if so be*, or *provided,)* haud sĕcus ac si, O si, *(O if,)* pĕrinde ac si, perinde quăsi, quăsi quin, *(but that,)* *tamquam*, *tanquamsi*, uti, *(that,)* ŭtĭnam, are construed with the subjunctive. An, ne, num, *whether*, have the indicative, unless they signify doubtfully or indefinitely, when they have the subjunctive.

Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative.

* The following prepositions govern the accusative; ad, *to*, apud, *at*, ante, *before*, adversus *or* adversum, *against*, circa, circiter, circum, *about*, cis, *on this side*, citrā, *on this side*, contra, *against*, erga, *towards*, extra, *without*, infra, *below*, inter, *between*, intra, *within*, juxta, *near*, ob, *for*, penes, *in the power of*, per, *through*, pone, *behind*, post, *after*, præter, *except*, prope, *near*, propter, *for*, secundum, *according to*, secus, *by*, supra, *above*, trans, *beyond*, ultra, *beyond*, versus, *towards*, usque, *to*.

Circiter, *prope*, *usque*, and *versus*, although classed by grammarians amongst prepositions, are adverbs; and, when they are joined with an accusative case, *ad* is always understood, when not expressed; as, *Prope muros.* *Ad* is often expressed; as, *Ab ovo usque ad mala.* See Shaw's Lat. Gram. p. 35.

Such prepositions as are set before nouns, which they govern in some particular cases, are said to be in apposition. See Part II. Sec. XVII. No. 1. Note †.

2. The ablative case is governed by certain prepositions*; as,

A puero. Cum exercitu. *From a child. With an army.*

3. A verb compounded with a preposition often governs the case of that preposition; as,

*Ad*eamus *scholam.* *Let us go to the school.*

4. The accusative and ablative are often governed by prepositions understood; as,

Habeo te loco *(in loco)* parentis. *I esteem you in the place of a parent.*

5. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs govern the same cases with the words, from which they are derived; as,

Canit *similiter huic.* *He sings like this man.*

SECTION

---

* Namely, a, ab, abs, *from*, absque, *without*, coram, *before*, cum, *with*, de, e, ex, *of, out of*, palam, *before*, præ, *before, in comparison of*, pro, *for*, sine, *without*, tenus, *up to.*

A and *e* are only put before consonants; *ab* and *ex* usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants.

The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the accusative, when motion *to* a place is signified; but, when motion or rest *in* a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter*, either the accusative or ablative.

Clam governs, indifferently, either the accusative or ablative.

Tenus governs either the ablative or genitive plural; but an ablative singular only. *Tenus* and *versus* are set after their cases, as also are *penes* and *usque*, sometimes.

Of, put for *concerning*, or *about*, is made in Latin by *de*; for *from*, by *a*, *ab*, or *de*; for *out of*, by *e* or *ex*. See Clarke's Introduction, Chap. xii.

Prepositions, in English, are often understood before nouns, particularly those which express time; as, *this day*; *last year*; *next month*; i. e. *in* or *on this day*; *in last year*, &c.

Sometimes, in Latin, the preposition is elegantly repeated; as, *In rempublicam incumbe.*

SECTION X.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES, viz.

Prothĕsis, aphærĕsis, syncŏpe, epenthĕsis, apocŏpe, paragōge, metathĕsis, antithĕsis, tmesis, enallăge, ellipsis, hellenism, pleonasm, hypallăge, anastrŏphe, hysterŏn protĕron, synchĕsis, solecism, barbarism, archaism.

1. PROTHESIS adds a letter or a syllable to the beginning of a word; as, *gnatus*, for *natus*; *tetuli*, for *tuli*.

2. Aphærĕsis takes away a letter or a syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *temnere*, for *contemnere*; *ruit*, for *irruit* or *eruit*.

3. Syncŏpe takes out a syllable from the middle of a word; as, *ĭsti*, for *ivisti*; *virûm*, for *virorum*.

4. Epenthĕsis inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *relligio*, for *religio*; *imduperatorem*, for *imperatorem*.

5. Apocŏpe cuts off a letter or syllable from the end of a word; as, *peculi*, for *peculii*; *mi*, for *mibi*.

6. Paragōge adds a syllable to the end of a word; as, *dicier*, for *dici*.

7. Metathĕsis changes the order of the letters of a word; and is properly a Greek figure.

8. Antithĕsis puts one letter for another; as, *olli*, for *illi*.

9. Tmesis is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words between its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni-gens*, for *septentrioni*. Virg.

10. Enallăge is the interchanging of one word for another, contrary to the common form of etymology; thus, a substantive is put for an adjective: as, *nemo homo*, for *nullus homo*: an adjective or participle for a substantive; as, *pauper*, for *pauper homo*; *medentes*, for *medici*: a verb for a substantive;

ſtantive; as, *ſcire tuum* nihil eſt, for *ſcientia tua* nihil eſt:* a pronoun for an adverb; as, *quid* multa? for *quorſum* multa? a ſentence for a ſubſtantive; as, *In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum eſt primum:* a verb for an adverb; as, *agè, amabò:* an adverb for a prepoſition; as, *proximè muros:*† a prepoſition for an adverb;‡ as, *Coram,* quem quæritis, adſum.

11. Ellipſis‖ is the elegant omiſſion of ſome word in a ſentence, contrary to the common form of ſyntax; as, *Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, (templum* being underſtood). *Hectŏris Andromache, (uxor* being underſtood).

12. A

---

* The infinitive mode has often much of the nature of a ſubſtantive, and may have the force of any caſe; as, *tacēre nocet nemini; conſilium cepit de ſe equitatum dimittere,* (for *dimittendi*); *etas mollis et apta regi, (regi,* for *rectioni*); *habeo dicere; O vivere noſtrum; dignus amari.*

† In this, and ſimilar inſtances, we may ſuppoſe *ad* is underſtood. See Sec. IX. No. 1. Note *.

‡ Prepoſitions, when they loſe their caſes, become adverbs. Enallage is called by ſome *Antimeria.*

‖ To ellipſis may be referred theſe eight figures, which grammarians have inſtituted.

1. Appoſitio; as, Rex Georgius: by ellipſis, for rex, *qui eſt,* or *exiſtens* Georgius.

2. Evocatio; as, Ego pauper laboro, tu dives ludis: by ellipſis, for *ego, qui ſum* pauper, labōro; tu, *qui es* dives, ludis.

3. Syllepſis; as, Ego et tu legimus. Charta et atramenta ſunt neceſſaria. By ellipſis, for ego et tu, *nos duo,* legimus. Charta et atramenta ſunt neceſſaria *inſtrumenta.*

4. Prolepſis; as, Duæ aquilæ volaverunt, hæc ab oriente, illa ab occidente; by ellipſis, for duæ aquilæ volaverunt, hæc *volavit* ab oriente, illa *volavit* ab occidente.

5. Zeugma; as, Ego et tu ſtudes. Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit. By ellipſis, for ego *ſtudeo,* et tu ſtudes. Hic illius arma *fuerunt,* hic currus fuit.

6. Synthĕſis; as, Gens armati ſunt. Centauro in magna. By ellipſis, for gens *hominum, illi* armati ſunt. Centauro, *in* magna *navi.*

7. Antiptōſis; as, Urbem quam ſtatuo, veſtra eſt; by ellipſis, *urbs* eſt veſtra, quam urbem ſtatuo.

8. Synecdŏche; as, Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem. Percutiebatur pectus. By ellipſis, for Æthiops albus *ſecundum* dentes. Saucius *circa,* &c. frontem. Percutiebatur *quoad,* or *ſuper,* or *ſecundum* pectus. See Holmes' Latin Grammar, page 73, 74.

12. A Hellenism or Græcism* is an imitation of the Greeks beyond the rules of Latin; as, *De verbis, quibus dixi;* for *quæ dixi.*†

13. Pleonasm is an abounding beyond what is necessary in a sentence; as, *Bellum, quo bello obiit.*

14. Hypallăge is a change of the order of words; as, *In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas corpora,* (formas mutatas in nova corpora, for *corpora mutata in novas formas.*) Necdum illis labra admovi, (for *necdum illa labris admovi.*) *Dare classibus austros,* (for *dare classes austris.*)

15. Anastrŏphe is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; his accensa super.*

16. Hystĕron protĕron is, when that is put in the former part of a sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *valet atque vivit,* for *vivit atque valet.*

17. Synchĕsis is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras,* for *quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras.* Virg.

18. A Solecism is an error in syntax, which cannot be defended by rule, or authority; as, *Da me panem,* (for *da mihi panem.*)

19. A Barbarism is the using of an improper or barbarous, for a classical or proper word; as, *incurabilis,* for *insanabilis.*

20. Archaism‡ is, when a word is used as anciently, when the Roman language was in its infancy; as, in the declensions,

---

* Antiptōsis and Synecdŏche may be considered as Græcisms.

† In imitation of peri logōn hōn elexa.

‡ *Hellenism, pleonasm, solecism, barbarism,* and *archaism* are not to be imitated.

declēnſions, 1. G. Pater-familias. 2. G. Menandru. 3. D. Morte. 4. G. Anuis. 5. G. Progenii.*

---

* Thus, 1. G. Materiāi. 2. D. Populoi. 3. G. plur. Epigrammaton. 4. D. Metu. 5. D. Facie.

So in verbs:

Scibam,	are uſed for	ſciēbam.
Scibo,		ſciam.
Dicem,		dicam.
Faxo,		fecĕro.
Faxim,		fecĕrim.
Faxem,		feciſſem.
Reddibo,		reddam.
Comedim,		comĕdam.
Prohibeſſim,		prohibuĕrim.
Prohibeſſem,		prohibuiſſem.
Prohibeſſo,		prohibuĕro.
Prohibeſſe,		prohibuiſſe.
Prohibeſſere,		prŏhĭbĭtūrum eſſe.

[1]See Holmes' Lat. Gram. p. 75.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

SECTION I.

Introduction to Proſody.

1. SYLLABLES, with reſpect to their *quantity*, are either long, or ſhort.

2. A *long* ſyllable, in pronouncing, requires double the time of a *ſhort* ſyllable; as, *cōndĕre.*

3. Some ſyllables are *common;* that is, ſometimes long, and ſometimes ſhort; as, the ſecond ſyllable in *volŭcris.*

4. A vowel is ſaid to be long, or ſhort, by nature, which is always ſo by the uſe of the poets.

5. In polyſyllables or long words, the laſt ſyllable except one is called the penult or penultima, and the laſt ſyllable except two, the antepenult or antepenultima.

6. When the length or quantity of a ſyllable is not fixed by a particular rule, it is ſaid to be long, or ſhort, by *nature* or *authority*, that is, according to the uſage of the poets. Thus, *le* in lĕgo is ſaid to be ſhort by authority, that is, according to the uſage of the poets.

7. In many Latin words of one or two ſyllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we cannot eaſily diſtinguiſh by the ear a long from a ſhort ſyllable. Thus, *le* in lĕgo and lēgi ſeems to be ſounded equally long; but, when we pronounce it in compoſition, the difference is evident; thus, relĕgo, relĕgĕre; relēgo, relēgāre.

8. A

8. A verſe is a certain number of long and ſhort ſyllables diſpoſed according to rule. It is ſo called, becauſe when the number of requiſite ſyllables is completed, we always *turn* back to a new line.

9. The parts into which we divide a verſe, to determine its juſt number of ſyllables, are called feet.

10. Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four ſyllables. When a ſingle ſyllable is taken by itſelf, it is called a Cæsūra, which is uſually a long ſyllable.

11. A liſt of the different feet uſed in Latin verſe:

Pyrrhichius, which conſiſts of two ſhort ſyllables; as, *Dĕŭs.*
Spondæus, two long ſyllables; as, *ōmnēs.*
Iambus, a ſhort and a long; as, *pĭōs.*
Trochæus, a long and a ſhort; as, *sērŭīt.*
Tribrachys, three ſhort; as, *dŏmĭnŭs.*
Dactylus, a long and two ſhort; as, *cōndĕrĕ.*
Moloſſus, three long; as, *dēlēctānt.*
Anapæſtus, two ſhort and a long; as, *pĭĕtās.*
Bacchius, a ſhort and two long; as, *dŏlōrēs.*
Antibacchius, two long and one ſhort; as, *pēllūntŭr.*
Amphimăcer, a ſhort between two long; as, *īnsĭtō.*
Amphibrăchys, a long between two ſhort; as, *bōnōrĕ.*
Proceleuſmaticus, four ſhort ſyllables; as, *bŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Diſpondæus, four long; as, *īnfīnītīs.*
Diiambus, conſiſts of two iambuſes; as, *sĕvērĭtās.*
Ditrochæus, of two trochees; as, *pērmănērĕ.*
Ionicus major, two ſhort and two long; as, *prŏpĕrābānt.*
Ionicus minor, two long and two ſhort; as, *cālcārĭbŭs.*
Choriambus, one long, two ſhort, and one long; as, *pōntĭfĭcēs.*
Antiſpaſtus, one ſhort, two long, and one ſhort; as, *ălexăndĕr.*
Pæon primus, one long and three ſhort; as, *tēmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Pæon ſecundus, ſecond long, the others ſhort; as, *vŏlūmĭnă.*
Pæon tertius, third long, the others ſhort; as, *ănĭmātŭs.*
Pæon quartus, the laſt long, the others ſhort; as, *cĕlĕrĭtās.*
Epitritus primus, one ſhort and three long; as, *vŏlŭptātēs.*
Epitritus ſecundus, ſecond ſhort, the others long; as, *pænĭtēntēs.*
Epitritus tertius, third ſhort, the others long; as, *dīscōrdĭās.*
Epitritus quartus, fourth ſhort, the others long; as, *fŏrtūnātŭs.*

See Elements of Criticiſm, Chap. XVIII. Sect. 4.

12. The hexameter or heroic verſe conſiſts of ſix feet, of which the firſt four may be either dactyls or ſpondees; but the fifth foot muſt be a dactyl, (except in a ſpondaic line, ſee No. 14.) and the ſixth a ſpondee (with reſpect to the ending of a verſe with a trochee, ſee No. 15.)

13. A

94395B

13. A pentameter verſe conſiſts of five feet. Of theſe the two firſt are either dactyls or ſpondees; the third always a ſpondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæſtus; as,

Nātū|ræ sĕquĭ|tūr sē|mĭnă quīs|quĕ sŭæ.

But this verſe is more properly divided into two hemiſticks or halves; the former of which conſiſts of two feet, either dactyls or ſpondees, and a cæsūra; the latter, always of two dactyls and another cæsūra; as,

Nātū|ræ sĕquĭ|tūr| sēmĭnă| quīsquĕ sŭ|æ.

14. Sometimes, though very ſeldom, the fifth foot in a hexameter verſe is a ſpondee; as,

Chāŏs dĕ|ūm sŏbŏ|lēs māg|nūm Jŏvĭs| īncrē|mēntūm.

A verſe of this conſtruction is called *ſpondaic*. This verſe is uſed, when any thing grave, ſlow, large, or ſad, is expreſſed. It commonly has a dactyl in the fourth place, and a word of four ſyllables at the end.

15. The laſt ſyllable of every verſe, although it ends with a trochee, is long, on account of the pauſe, or ſuſpenſion of the voice, which takes place in pronunciation; thus,

Sānguĭnĕ|æ clўpĕ|ōquĕ mĭ|cāntĭă| fūlgŭră| mittīt.

16. The meaſuring of verſe, or the reſolving of it into the ſeveral feet of which it is compoſed, is called *ſcanning*. When a verſe has juſt the number of feet requiſite, it is called *verſus acatalectus*, or *acatalecticus*, an acatalectic verſe; if a ſyllable be wanting, it is called *catalecticus*; if there be a ſyllable too much, *hypercatalecticus*, or *hypermĕter*.

17. Sometimes there remains a ſuperfluous ſyllable at the end. This ſyllable muſt either terminate in a *vowel*, or in the conſonant *m* with a vowel before it, ſo as to be joined to the following verſe, which, in the preſent caſe, muſt begin with a vowel; as,

Ōmnĭă| Mĕrcŭrĭ|ō sĭmĭ|līs vō|cēmqŭe cŏ|lōrēmque
Ēt flā|vos cri|nes, &c.

18. The ſeveral changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verſe, are called figures in ſcanning. The chief

chief of these are the *Synalæpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Dierĕsis, Systŏle,* and *Diastŏle.*

19. Synalæpha cuts off a vowel or diphthong from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, diphthong, or h; as

Nē fŭgĭ|te hōspĭtĭ|ūm nē|ve īgnō|rātĕ Lă|tīnōs. Read thus;

Nē fŭgĭ|t' ōspĭtĭ|ūm nē|v' īgnō|rātĕ Lă|tīnōs.

20. Synalæpha is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *O, heu, ah, hei,* &c. as,

Ō pătĕr| Ō hŏmĭ|nūm dī|vūmque æ|tērnă pŏ|tēstās.

21. Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Īnsŭlæ| Īŏnĭ|o īn măg|nō quās| dīră Cē|lænō.

22. Ecthlipsis is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel, diphthong, or h; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Scanned thus:

Mōnstr' ōr|rēnd' īn|fōrm' īn|gēns cūi|lūmĕn ă|dēmptūm.

23. Sometimes the ecthlipsis, as well as synalæpha, is found at the end of a verse; as,

Jāmque ĭtĕr| ēmēn|sī tūr|rēs āc| tēctă Lă|tīnōrum.
Ārdŭă| cērnē|bānt jŭvĕ|nēs, mū|rōsquĕ sŭb|ībānt.

Such verses are called hypermĕtri, because a syllable remains to be carried to the next line. See No. 16.

24. Synærĕsis is the contraction of two syllables into one; as, *Phæthon,* for Phäethon. Thus dii is often pronounced *di;* aureâ, *aurâ,* &c. Also genua, *genva;* arietat, *arjetat.*

25. Dierĕsis divides one syllable into two; as *Tröiæ,* for Troiæ; *fŭetus,* for fuetus; *filïæ,* for filvæ.

26. Systŏle is, when a long syllable is made short; as,

Ōbstŭpŭ|ī stĕtĕ|rūntquĕ cŏ|mæ ēt vōx| faūcĭbŭs| hæsīt.

Stetĕrunt for *stetērunt.*

27. Diaſtole is, when a ſyllable uſually ſhort is made long; as, the laſt ſyllable in *amor*, in the following verſe:

Ōmnĭă| vīncĭt ă|*mōr* ēt| nōs cē|dāmŭs ă|mōrī.*

SECTION

---

* Hexameter lines, as to time, are all of the ſame length, being equivalent to the time taken in pronouncing twelve long ſyllables, or twenty-four ſhort ones.

A hexameter line may conſiſt of ſeventeen ſyllables; and, when not ſpondaic, it never has fewer than thirteen; as,

Panditur interea domus omnipotentis Olympi—17.
Olli ſubridens ſedato pectore Turnus—13.

If any chooſe to ſubſtitute the following rules, inſtead of confining themſelves to ſpondees and dactyls, they will fulfil all the conditions of a hexameter line, with reſpect to order or arrangement, viz.

1. The line muſt always commence with a long ſyllable, and cloſe with two long preceded with two ſhort; except thoſe lines that are called ſpondaic, which cloſe with four long ſyllables.

2. More than two ſhort ſyllables can never be found in any part of a line, nor fewer than two.

3. Two long ſyllables, which have been preceded by two ſhort, cannot alſo be followed by two ſhort.

Indeed, a ſingle rule may be ſubſtituted, as a hexameter line may be divided into twelve equal parts or portions, each part being one long, or two ſhort ſyllables. It is this. The 1ſt, 3d, 5th, 7th, 9th, 11th, and 12th portions muſt each of them be one long ſyllable: the 10th muſt always be two ſhort ſyllables (except in a ſpondaic line, which ends with four long ſyllables:) the 2d, 4th, 6th, and 8th portions may be either one long ſyllable, or two ſhort.

To expreſs the thing yet more conciſely; the 2d, 4th, 6th, and 8th portions may each be one long ſyllable, or two ſhort; the 10th (except in ſpondaic lines) muſt be two ſhort ſyllables; all the reſt muſt be long ſyllables.

See Elements of Criticiſm, Chap. XVIII. Sect. 4.

SECTION II.

Vowels long by position; contracted syllables; diphthong. A vowel before another; derivatives; compounds; preterites of two syllables; supines of two syllables; preterites which double the first syllable.

1. A VOWEL before two single consonants, or before a double consonant, is long by position; as, *ārma, cōndo, āxis, gāza, Trōja.** But,

2. A short vowel† before a mute, when a liquid immediately follows, is varied in poetry, but short in prose; as, Ēt prīmō sīmĭlīs vŏlŭcrī mōx vērā vŏlucrīs.

3. A contracted syllable is long; as, *nīl*, for *nihil*; *mî*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coago*; *alīus*, for *aliius*.

4. A diphthong in Latin is always long; except *præ* in composition, when a vowel follows, which is usually short; as, *Cæsar, aurum; præustus*.

5. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *mĕus, tŭus, nĭhil*. ‡

6. Derivatives

---

* When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes long by position; as,

Fērtĕ cĭtī flām mās, dăte vēlā, scāndĭtĕ mūrōs.

† *L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words: *m* and *n* do not take place, except in Greek words.

To make this rule hold, the vowel must be naturally short; the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is common in verse, because *a* in *păter* is naturally short in prose, or always so by custom; but *a* in *mātris* and *ācris* is always long, because long by nature or custom in *māter* and *ācer*. In like manner, *u* in *salūbris* and the penult in *arātrum* are always long, because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *arātum*.

‡ *I* is long in *fīo, fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *e* and *r*; as, fĭĕrem, fĭĕri; thus,

Ōmnĭă jām fī ĕnt fĭĕ rī quæ pōssĕ nĕ gābām.

E having

6. Derivatives usually* retain the quantity of their primitives; as, *ămīcus*, from *ămo*; *ănĭmōsus*, from *ănĭmus*; *lĕgēbam*, from *lĕgo*.

7. Compounds retain the quantity of their simples; as, *lĕgo, is, perlĕgo*; *lĕgo, as, allĕgo*.†

8. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci*. Except *bĭbi, scĭdi, stĕti, dĕdi, tŭli, stĭti, fĭdi* from *findo*.

9. Supines of two syllables have the first syllable long; as, *vīsum, cāsum, nōtum*. Except *sĭtum*, from *sero*; *cĭtum*, from *cieo*; *lĭtum*, from *lino*; *rĭtum*, from *sĭno*; *flătum*, from *flo*; *ĭtum*, from *eo*; *dătum*, from *do*; *rŭtum*, from *ruo*; *quĭtum*, from *queo*; *rătum*, from *reor*.

10. Preterites, which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as, *cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi*: except *cecīdi*, from *cædo*; *pepēdi*, from *pēdo*, &c.

11. These prepositions, *a, e, de, se, di, pro, præ*, are long; all other prepositions, if not placed in position, are short.‡

SECTION

‖ *E* having *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long, as faciēi. So is the first syllable in āer, dīus, ēheu, and the penult in aulāi, pictāi, &c.

‖ The first syllable in ohe and Diana is common; as likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *unius, illius*, &c. *Alīus*, in the genitive, is always long, as being contracted for *alĭius* (see No. 3); *alterĭus* is always short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, it is sometimes short; as, *Daphăe, idĕa, Sophĭa, Simŏis, Hÿades, Phœon, Thebăis*.

It is often long; as, *Lycāon, Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Ænēas, Cytherēa, Lāertes, Brisēis*.

It is sometimes common; as, in *cherēa, platēa*.

* There are, however, many exceptions; as, *dēni*, from *dĕcem*; *hūmanus*, from *hŏmo*; *rēgula*, from *rĕgo*, &c.

† Except *agnĭtum, cognĭtum, dejĕro*, &c. from *nātus, jūro*, &c. the preposition *pro* is short in several words; as, *prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfugus*, &c.

‡ Except *re* in *rĕfert*, *pro* in *prŏfugus*, *præ* in composition when a vowel follows, &c.

SECTION III.

Increaſe of Nouns.

1. A NOUN is ſaid to increaſe, when it has more ſyllables in any of the oblique caſes than in the nominative; as, *lux, lūcis.* Here *lu* is called the *increaſe* or *crement;* and ſo through all the other caſes. The laſt ſyllable is never eſteemed a crement.

2. Some nouns have a double increaſe, that is, increaſe by more ſyllables than one; as, *iter, itĭnĕris.*

3. A noun in the plural is ſaid to increaſe, when in any caſe it has more ſyllables than the genitive ſingular; as, *gener, gĕnĕri, gĕnĕrōrum.*

4. Nouns of the firſt, fourth, and fifth declenſions, do not increaſe in the ſingular number, unleſs where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructŭi; ſpes, ſpĕi;* which come under rule 5. Sec. ii.

5. The increaſe of the ſecond declenſion is always ſhort; except *Ibēri,* and *Celtibēri.*

6. Nouns of the third declenſion, which increaſe, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u,* ſhort; as, *pietātis, honōris, muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.*

Exception 1. Maſculines in *al* and *ar,* and *vas, vădis, mos, anas, lar, jubar;* and Greek nouns, making *ădis* in the genitive, or which ending in *a* make *ătis.*

(2.) Neuters which make ŏris in the genitive, and proper names, as Hector; (but *os ōris,* a mouth, is long). Shorten alſo *arbor, impos, compos, bos, lepus,* and words in *obs* and *ops.* But *Cecrops, hydrops,* and *cyclops,* are long.

(3.) The increaſe of *hæres, locuples, merces, quies, ſeps, rex, lex, plebs, magnes, lebes, cures, halec,* and words which make ēnis in the genitive.

(4.) Greek words making *īnis* or *ȳnis* in the genitive; and *lis, dis, Samnis, gryps, quiris, vibex,* and ſeveral nouns in *yx* and *ix,* &c.

(5.) Nouns in *us,* which make *ūris, ūdis,* and *ūtis* in the genitive: but the increaſe of *ligus, intercus, pecus, augur, ligur,*

gur, *murmur*, *furfur*, and *vultur* are short; of *fur*, *lux*, and *Pollux* long.

7. Nouns of the plural number which increase make *a*, *e*, and *o* long; but shorten *i* and *u* as, *musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *regĭbus*, *portŭbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bŏvĭbus*.

SECTION IV.

Increase of Verbs. Quantity of the Penult of Words.

1. A VERB is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*; here, in *amamus*, the second syllable (*ma*) is the *increase* or *crement*; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

2. A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmus*; in this case, it is said to have a *first* and *second* increase; in *amābāmĭni*, a *first*, a *second*, and a *third* increase.

3. *A* and *o* in the increase of verbs are long (except *a* in *do* and its compounds of the first conjugation); as, also, is *e*, unless before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ras*, *rat*, *ramus*, &c. in *bĕris*, *bĕre*, &c. and before *rem* and *rer*, and in *ĕre*, infinitive active, and imperative passive, of the third conjugation.

4. *I* and *u* in the increase of verbs are short: except the first increase of the fourth conjugation; and in *velīmus*, *nolīmus*, *malīmus*, *sīmus*, *nolīto*, *fīto*; *velītis*, *malītis*, &c.

N. B. The poets sometimes shorten *ēterunt* and *dederunt*.* In the future of the subjunctive, they have sometimes *rimus*, *rītis*.

5. Patronymics in *ides* or *adēs* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes*, *Atlantiădes*: unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes*, *Atrīdes*.

6. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ois*, *otis*, *ine*,

* See Section I. No. 26.

ine, and *one*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Aehāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Memphītis*, *Latōis*, &c. Except *Thēbāis*, *Phocāis*, and *Nerēis* which is common.

7. Adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, and *imus*, usually shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiăcus*, *academĭcus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissĭmus*. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *aprīcus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *postīcus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfĭdus* is short) *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īmus* and *prīmus*.

8. Adjectives in *alis*, *anus*, *arus*, *ivus*, *orus*, and *osus*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*. Except *barbărus* and *opipărus*.

9. Verbal adjectives in *ilis* shorten the penult; as, *agĭlis*, *facĭlis*. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*. To these add *exīlis*, *subtīlis*; and names of months; as, *Aprīlis*, *Quintīlis*.

10. All adjectives in *atilis* have the penult short; as, *versătĭlis*, *volatĭlis*, *umbrătĭlis*.

11. Adjectives in *inus* derived from inanimate things; as, *plantis*, *stones*, &c. and also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *āmaracĭnus*, *adamantĭnus*, *crastĭnus*. But,

12. Other adjectives in *inus* are long; as, *agnīnus*, *bīnus*, *Latīnus*, *matrīnus*, *supīnus*.

13. Diminutives in *ulus*, *ola*, *olum*; and in *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, always shorten the penult; as, *urcĕŏlus*, *filĭŏla*, *lectŭlus*, *ratiuncŭla*, *corcŭlum*.

14. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim*, *virītim*, *tribūtim*. Except *affātim*, *perpĕtim*, and *flătim*.

15. Desiderative verbs in *urio* shorten the antepenult, which in the second and third person singular is the penult; as, *esŭrio*, *esŭris*, *esŭrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*.

16. The penult of several words is doubtful; as, *Batāvi* or *Batăvi*, *fortūitus* or *fortŭitus*, *patrīmus* or *patrĭmus*, *matrīmus* or *matrĭmus*.

17. The

17. The firſt and middle ſyllables of words, which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are ſaid to be long, or ſhort, by *authority*; and their quantity can only be determined by the uſage of the poets, which is the moſt certain of all rules.

SECTION V.

Final Syllables.

1. *A* IN the end of a word declined by caſes is ſhort; as, *Muſă, regnă, Tydeă, lampadă.* Except the ablative of the firſt declenſion, and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, which have *a* long; as, *Æneā, mensā.*

2. *A* in the end of a word not declined by caſes *is* long; as, *amā, fruſtrā, ergā, intrā.* But *ită, quiă, ejă, poſteă, pută* (the adverb) are ſhort. The prepoſitions *contra, ultra*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *triginta*, &c. are ſometimes ſhort. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

3. *E* in the end of a word is ſhort; as, *natĕ, legĕ, currĕ.*

Exception 1. Monoſyllables ending in *e* are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*; but enclitic conjunctions, as, *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ*; and theſe ſyllabic adjections, *plĕ, cĕ, tĕ*, with *benĕ, malĕ*, and *magĕ*, are ſhort.

Exception 2. Words ending in *e* of the firſt and fifth declenſion are long; as, *Calliopē, Anchiſē, fidē.* So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridiē, poſtridiē, quotidiē*: alſo Greek nouns wanting the ſingular; as, *cetē, melē, Tempē*; and the ſecond perſon ſingular of the imperative of the ſecond conjugation; as, *docē, monē*; but *cave, vale*, and *vide* are ſometimes ſhort.

Exception 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē.* To theſe add *fermē, ferē*, and *obē*; alſo all adverbs of the ſuperlative degree; as, *fortiſſimē*, &c.

4. *I* in the end of a word is long; as, *annī, amarī.*

Exception 1. Greek vocatives are ſhort; as, *Alexĭ.*

Exception

Exception 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase is common; as, *Palladi*. Also *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*, and *cui*, when a dissyllable, are common. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

5. *O* final is common; as, *virgo, amo, quando*.

Exception 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, prō*: the dative and ablative singular of the second declension is long; as, *dominō, librō*: also Greek nouns; as, *Didō*, and *Athō*, the genitive of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, ideō*, &c. also *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō*, and *ultrō*.

Exception 2. The following words have final *o* short: *egŏ, scio, cedŏ* a defective verb; *homŏ, citŏ, illicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ*, and *modŏ*, with its compounds, *quomodŏ, dummodŏ, postmodŏ*, &c. Some of these, however, are also found long.

Exception 3. The gerund in *do* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is often short. *Ergo*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

6. *U* final is long; *y* final is short; as, *vultū, Tiphў*.

7. *B, d, l, r*, and *t*, in the end of words, are short; as, *apŭd, semĕl, caput*: except *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār* and its compounds; *fār, lār, nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *cratēr, ibēr, vēr*; likewise *aēr, æthēr*; to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Danīel, Davīd*.

N. B. *M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *militŭm octo*. Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo, circumeo*.

8. *C* and *n*, in the end of words, are long; as, *āc, sīc, hūn, Titān, Anchisēn, Salamīn*: but the following words are short, *nĕc* and *donĕc; forsităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, vidĕn*, and *all* such as end in *en* by apostrophe; also nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive; as, *carmĕn, crimĕn*; and likewise several Greek nouns; as, *Iliŏn, Pyliŏn, Alcsĭn*. The verb *fac*, and the pronoun *hic*, and hoc (not the ablative) are common.

9. *As, es,* and *os,* in the end of words, are long; as, *mās, quiēs, faciēs, dominōs.* But the following are short; *anăs, ĕs* from *sum,* and *penĕs*; *os* having *ŏssis* in the genitive, *compos* and *impos*; also many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcăs, Arcădas, herōăs, Phrygĕs, Arcadŏs, Tenedŏs, Melŏs*; likewise Latin nouns singular in *os* of the second declension, and nouns in *es,* having the penult of the genitive increasing short. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

10. *Is, us,* and *ys,* in the end of words, are short; as, *turrĭs, regimŭs, annŭs, Capўs.*

Exception 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *mensīs, nobīs, omnīs* for *omnes, manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*; but *bus* in the dative and ablative plural is short, both in the third and fourth declension; as, *floribŭs, fructibŭs.*

Exception 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive *ītis, ēnis,* or *entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Simoīs.* To these add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs,* and *vīs,* whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular of a verb, when the plural has *ītis*; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs. Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exception 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*; also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis,* or *ŏdis*; as, *tellus, incus,* &c. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clūs, Sapphūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs.*

Exception 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys* which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcўs.*

SECTION

SECTION VI.

Different Kinds of Verſe.

BESIDE hexameter and pentameter verſe,* the Latin poets have written in many other kinds; ſome of which are the following: *Aſclepiad* or *Aſclepiadēan*, *Sapphic*, *Glyconic* or *Glyconian*, *Archilochic* or *Archilochian*, *Pherecratian*, *Aſclepiad Glyconic*, *Dactylic Alcmanian*, *Ariſtophanic*, *Choriambic Alcaic*, *Dactylic Alcaic*, *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, *Iambic Archilochic*, *Ionic*, *Dactylic Archilochic*, *Pure Iambic*, *Iambic Hipponactic*, *Adonic*.

1. The *Aſclepiad* verſe conſiſts of four feet, viz. a *ſpondee*, two *choriambuſes*, and a *pyrrhichius*; as,

Mæcē|nās ătăvīs| ēdĭtĕ rē|gĭbŭs. Hor. Ode i. of Book I.

But this verſe may be more eaſily meaſured thus; by a ſpondee, in the firſt place; a dactyl, in the ſecond; then a cæſūra; and after that two dactyls; thus,

Mæcē|nās ătă|vīs| ēdĭtĕ| rēgĭbŭs.

N. B. The laſt foot may be an amphimăcer.

2. The *Sapphic* verſe has five feet; a *trochee*, *ſpondee*, *dactyl*, and two trochees;† thus,

Jām să|tīs tēr|rīs nĭvĭs|quĕ| dīræ. Hor. Ode II. Book I.

But every fourth verſe is an *Adonic*, conſiſting of a *dactyl* and a *ſpondee*; as, Tĕrrŭīt|ūrbēm.

3. The *Glyconic* or *Glyconian* verſe conſiſts of a *ſpondee*, a *choriambus*, and a *pyrrhichius*, or an *iambus*; as,

Sīc tē| dīvă pŏtēns| Cўprī. Hor. Ode III. Book I.

Every ſecond verſe is *Aſclepiad*; as,

Sīc frā|trēs Hĕlĕ|næ| lūcĭdă| sīdĕră.

4. The *Dactylic Archilochic* conſiſts of *dactyls* or *ſpondees* indifferently

* See Section I. No. 12 and 13.

† The laſt foot may be a ſpondee.

indifferently in the four firſt feet, as in heroic verſe; then of three *trochees*, or a *ſpondee* for the laſt; as,

Sōlvĭtŭr| ācrĭs hў|ēms grā|tā vĭcĕ| vērĭs| ēt fă|vōnī.
Hor. Ode IV. Book I.

But every ſecond verſe is an *Iambic Archilochic*, conſiſting of an *iambus*, a *trochee* or *iambus*, a *cæſura*, and three *trochees*, or a *ſpondee* for the laſt; as,

Trăhūnt|quĕ sīc|cās| măchĭ|næ că|rīnās.

5. The *Pherecratian* meaſure requires, that the two firſt verſes or lines be Aſclepiad; as,

Quīs mūltă grăcĭlīs tĕ pŭĕr īn rōsā
Pĕrfūsūs lĭquĭdīs ūrgĕt ŏdōrĭbŭs; that the third verſe conſiſt of a *ſpondee*, a *dactyl*, and a *ſpondee*; as, Grātō, Pyrrhă, sŭb āntrō.

But every fourth line of this kind of verſe is *Glyconic*; as, Cuī flāvām rĕlĭgās cŏmām. Hor. Ode v. of Book I.

6. The Aſclepiad Glyconic has the three firſt verſes all Aſclepiad; but every fourth verſe is Glyconic; thus,

Scrĭbērīs Vărĭō fortĭs, ĕt hōſtĭum
Vĭctōr, Mæŏnĭī cārmĭnĭs ālĭtĕ,
Quām rĕm cūnquĕ fĕrōx nāvĭbŭs āut ĕquīs
Mīlēs, tĕ dŭcĕ, gēſsĕrĭt. Hor. Ode vi. Book I.

7. The *Dactylic Alcmanian* conſiſts of the four laſt feet of a heroic verſe; as,

Aūt Ephĕsūm, bĭmărīsvĕ Cŏrīnthī. Hor. Ode vii. Book I.

8. The *Ariſtophanic* conſiſts of a *choriambus* and a *bacchius*; as,

Lўdĭă, dīc,| pĕr ōmnĕs. Hor. Ode viii. B. I.

But every ſecond line is *Choriambic Alcaic*; and conſiſts of an *epitritus ſecundus*, two *choriambuſes*, and a *bacchius*; thus,

Tē dĕōs ō|rō Sўbărīn|cūr prŏpĕrēs| ămāndō.

9. The

9. The *Dactylic Alcaic*, or *Horatian*, consists of two *iambuses* (or a *spondee* for the second foot), then a *cæsura*, and two *dactyls*;* as, Hor. Ode ix. Book I.

Vĭdēs, ŭt āltā̆ stēt nĭvĕ cāndĭdūm
Sŏrāctē; nēc jām sūstĭnĕānt ŏnŭs.

But every third verse is *Iambic Archilochic*, consisting of four feet, the first and third an *iambus* or *spondee*, the second and fourth *iambuses* only, and a *cæsura*; thus,

Sīlvǣ lăbōrāntēs gĕlū|que.

Every fourth verse is *Dactylic Alcaic*, consisting of two *dactyls* and two *trochees*, or a *spondee* for the last *trochee*; as,

Flūmĭnă cōnstĭtĕrīnt ăcūtō.

10. The *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter* verse consists of a *spondee*, three *choriambuses*, and a *pyrrhichius* or *iambus*; as,

Tū nē| quæsĭĕrīs| scīrĕ nĕfās| quēm mĭhĭ quēm| tĭbĭ.
Hor. Ode xi. Book I.

11. The *Ionic* measure consists of three *ionics*, each of which is composed of two short and two long syllables;† as,

Mĭsĕrārum ēst,| nĕque ămōrī| dărĕ lūdūm,
Nĕquĕ dūlcī| mălā vīnō| lăvĕre; aut ēx.

But every third verse consists of four ionics; as,

Ănĭmārī,| mĕtŭēntēs| pătrŭæ vĕr|bĕrā lĭnguæ.
Hor. Ode xii. Book III.

12. Of *Iambic* verse there are several kinds. One consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name, *Dimĕter*, because among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse. Another consists of six feet, and, for the same reason, is called Trimĕter.

13. Pure Iambic of four feet;

Ĭnār|sĭt ǣ|stŭō| sĭūs. Hor. Epod. iii.

* The last foot may be an *amphimăcer*.
† The greater ionics.

Pure Iambic of six feet;

Sūīs| ĕt īp|să Rō|mă vī|rĭbūs| rŭīt. Hor. Epod. xvi.

14. Originally, this kind of verse admitted of no other feet but the *iambus*. But, afterwards, for the sake of ease and variety, some other feet were intermixed: for instance; in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an *iambus*, they used a *spondæe*, a *dactyl*, or an *anapæstus*; and sometimes a *tribrachys*. We also find a *tribrachys* in the second and fourth places.

Examples.

Cānĭdŭ|lă trāc| tāvīt| dăpēs. Hor.
Vĭdē|rĕ prŏpĕ|rāntēs| dŏmūm. Id.
Quōquō| scĕlēs|tī rŭ|tĭlŭs āut| cūr dĕx|tĕrĭs. Id.

15. A poem, composed in one kind of verse only, is called by a Greek name, Monocōlon, scil. *poema* vel *carmen*; or *Monocōlos*, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, *Dicōlon*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricōlon*.

16. If the same kind of verse return after the second line, it is called *Dicōlon Distrŏphon*; as, when a single *Pentamĕter* is alternately placed after a *hexameter*, which is called Elegīac verse, because it was first applied to mournful subjects.

17. When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrŏphon*; when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrŏphon*.

18. When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrŏphon*; but, if it return after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetrastrŏphon*.

19. Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprised, taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

SECTION

SECTION VII.

Accent, Emphasis, and Cadence.

1. ACCENT is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

2. In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is pronounced with a stronger voice than the rest; as, the second syllable in contrib'ute, deco'rum, ama'bam, cupi'do. See Part I. ~~Sec. 6. No. 23.~~

3. Emphasis is the pronouncing of some particular word or words in a sentence with a stronger voice than the rest.

4. Emphatical words in a sentence are those which are most important, and on which the sense of the rest much depends. Therefore, they are to be marked by a fuller sound of the voice, to render the meaning of the sentence plain, as well as to gratify the ear.*

5. Cadence generally takes place at the end of a sentence, when the words or syllables to be marked by it are pronounced with an easy and graceful falling of the voice; to be heard, however, as distinctly as the others.

6. In questions, the voice is often to rise towards the end of a sentence, contrary to the usual manner of pronouncing; because then the emphatic word, or that, upon which the stress of the question lies, is often last, or nearly the last, in the sentence. This is frequently the case, also, before a point of admiration.

---

* Proper emphasis is always pleasing; but when it is too frequent, or improperly applied, it is disagreeable.

AN

APPENDIX

TO THE FOREGOING

GRAMMAR.

Cardinal Numbers, answering to quot, *how many?*

UNUS, a, um,	*one.*
Duo, æ, o,	*two.*
Tres, tria,	*three.*
Quātuor, (this and the following to a hundred are undeclined)	*four.*
Quinque,	*five.*
Sex,	*six.*
Septem,	*seven.*
Octo,	*eight.*
Nŏvem,	*nine.*
Děcem,	*ten.*
Undĕcim,	*eleven.*
Duŏdĕcim,	*twelve.*
Trĕdĕcim,	*thirteen.*
Quātuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*
Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*
Sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*
Septendĕcim,	*seventeen.*
Octōdĕcim,	*eighteen.*
Nŏvendĕcim, or Undĕviginti,	*nineteen.*
Vīginti,	*twenty.*
Viginti unus, &c.	*twenty one.*
Trīginta,	*thirty.*
Quadrāginta,	*forty.*
Quinquāginta,	*fifty.*
Sexāginta,	*sixty.*
Septuāginta,	*seventy.*
Octōginta,	*eighty.*
Nōnāginta,	*ninety.*
Centum,	*a hundred.*
Dŭcenti, æ, a,	*two hundred.*
Trĕcenti, æ, a,	*three hundred.*
Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*
Quingenti,	*five hundred.*
Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*
Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*
Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*
Nōningenti,	*nine hundred.*
Mille,	*a thousand.*

Ordinal Numbers, answering to quotus, *what in number, order, &c.*

Prīmus, a, um,	*the first.*
Sĕcundus,	*second.*
Tertius,	*third.*
Quartus,	*fourth.*

Quintus

Quintus,	*fifth.*
Sextus,	*sixth.*
Septimus,	*seventh.*
Octāvus,	*eighth.*
Nonus,	*ninth.*
Decimus,	*tenth.*
Undecimus,	*eleventh.*
Duodecimus,	*twelfth.*
Decimus tertius,	*thirteenth.*
Decimus quartus,	*fourteenth.*
Decimus quintus,	*fifteenth.*
Decimus sextus,	*sixteenth.*
Decimus septimus,	*seventeenth.*
Decimus octāvus,	*eighteenth.*
Decimus nonus,	*nineteenth.*
Vicesimus, *or* Vigesimus,	*twentieth.*
Tricesimus, *or* Trigesimus,	*thirtieth.*
Quadrāgesimus,	*fortieth.*
Quinquāgesimus,	*fiftieth.*
Sexāgesimus,	*sixtieth.*
Septuāgesimus,	*seventieth.*
Octōgesimus,	*eightieth.*
Nonāgesimus,	*ninetieth.*
Centesimus,	*the hundredth.*
Ducentesimus,	*two hundredth.*
Trecentesimus,	*three hundredth.*
Quadringentesimus,	*four hundredth.*
Quingentesimus,	*five hundredth.*
Sexcentesimus,	*six hundredth.*
Septingentesimus,	*seven hundredth.*
Octingentesimus,	*eight hundredth.*
Noningentesimus,	*nine hundredth.*
Millesimus,	*a thousandth.*

Of the Roman Coins.

THE Romans reckoned their money by *as* or *es*, *asses*, *sestertii* or *nummi*, *denarii*, *solidi* or *aurei*, *pondo* or *libra*. The *as* or *us* was so named as being of brass, and at first consisted of a pound weight; but was in time reduced to two ounces; then to one ounce; and at last to half an ounce. Its parts were, the *semis*, or half *as*; the *triens*, or third part of the *as*; the *quadrans*, or fourth part, by some called the *triuncis* and *teruncius*, because it contained three ounces, before the value was diminished; the *sextans*, or sixth part, which made two ounces; and lastly, the *uncia*, or twelfth part, making one ounce. They had likewise names for any other number of ounces under twelve; as the *quincunx*, *septunx*, *bes*, *dodrans*, &c. The *sestertius* was the fourth part of the *denarius*, in value about two pence sterling. It is often called absolutely *nummus*, because it was in most frequent use; as also *sestertius nummus*. When the word is used in the neuter gender, *sestertium*, it denotes always a thousand *sestertii*.

The *denarius* was a silver coin, in use among the Romans, so called because it contained *denos aeris*, ten asses; it

it was equivalent to four *ſeſtertii*, or about eight pence ſterling. The *ſolidus* or *aureus* was a gold coin, equal in value to two denarii. The *as*, becauſe at firſt it was a pound weight, is often thus expreſſed, L. And the *ſeſtertius*, becauſe it was equivalent to two pounds of braſs and a half, thus, H S or L L S. The ſums in uſe among the Romans were chiefly three; the *ſeſtertium*, the *libra*, and the *talent*. The *ſeſtertium*, as we have already obſerved, was equivalent to a thouſand *ſeſtertii*, about eight pounds ſterling.

In reckoning by ſeſterces, the Romans had an art, which may be underſtood by the three following rules, viz.

1. When a numeral noun agrees in caſe, gender, and number, with ſeſtertius, then it denotes preciſely ſo many ſeſtertii; as, decem ſeſtertii, *ten ſeſtertii*.

2. If a numeral noun of another caſe be joined with the genitive plural of *ſeſtertius*, it denotes ſo many thouſand *ſeſtertii*; as, decem ſeſtertiûm; *ten thouſand ſeſtertii*.

3. If an adverb numeral be joined, it denotes ſo many hundred thouſand; as, millies ſeſtertiûm; *a thouſand times a hundred thouſand ſeſtertii*. The *libra* or pound contained twelve ounces of ſilver, and was worth three pounds ſterling. The talent contained twenty four *ſeſtertia*, amounting to about a hundred and ninety two pounds.

See Duncan's Cicero, pag. 12 and 13.

☞ Bis millè libræ, or duo millia librarum, *two thouſand pounds*.

Rules for finding out the Kalends, Nones, and Ides.

THE Romans uſed to reckon the days of their months by *kalends, nones, and ides*.* The kalends were always fixed to the

---

* Romulus began his months always upon the firſt day of the new moon, to avoid the altering of the immovable feaſts.

Therefore, at every new moon, one of the inferior prieſts uſed to aſſemble the people in the capitol, and *call* over as many days as were between

the firſt day of every month; but the nones and the ides, in four months, were on different days from the other eight: For *March*, May, *July*, and October, had ſix nones each; the other only four. Therefore, in the former, the nones were the ſeventh, and the ides the fifteenth; in the latter, the nones the fifth, and the ides the thirteenth.

A Specimen of reckoning by the Kalends, Nones, and Ides.

January 1ſt. was the firſt of the Kalends of January. December 31ſt, Prid. Kal. Jan. Dec. 30th, the third Kal. Jan. and ſo on to the 13th day of the month; and that was Idus Decembris. The 12th, Prid. Id. Dec. The 11th, third Id. Dec. and ſo on to the fifth, and that was Nonæ Decembris. The 4th, Prid. Non. Dec. and ſo on to the firſt, which was Kal. Dec. This will evidently appear by attention to the following Table.

---

between that and the nones. And ſo from the old word *calo*, to call, the firſt of thoſe days had the name of *Kalendæ*. But this cuſtom of calling the days continued only to the year of the city, 450; when C. Flavius, the Curule Ædile, ordered the Faſti, or Kalender, to be ſet up in the public places, that every one might know the difference of times, and return of feſtivals.

The nones were ſo called, becauſe they reckoned nine days from them to the ides.

The ides were about the middle of the month. We may derive *idus* from *iduare*, an obſolete word, ſignifying *to divide*.

TABLE.

TABLE.

	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct.	Jan. Aug. Dec.	Apr. Jun. Sep. Nov.	Februarius.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.
3	5° Nonas.	3° Nonas.	3° Nonas.	3° Nonas.
4	4° Nonas.	Prid. Nonas.	Prid. Nonas.	Prid. Nonas.
5	3° Nonas.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.
7	Nonæ.	7° Idus.	7° Idus.	7° Idus.
8	8° Idus.	6° Idus.	6° Idus.	6° Idus.
9	7° Idus.	5° Idus.	5° Idus.	5° Idus.
10	6° Idus.	4° Idus.	4° Idus.	4° Idus.
11	5° Idus.	3° Idus.	3° Idus.	3° Idus.
12	4° Idus.	Prid. Idus.	Prid. Idus.	Prid. Idus.
13	3° Idus.	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	19° Kalendas.	18° Kalendas.	16° Kal.
15	Idus.	18° Kal.	17° Kal.	15° Kal.
16	17° Kalendas.	17° Kal.	16° Kal.	14° Kal.
17	16° Kal.	16° Kal.	15° Kal.	13° Kal.
18	15° Kal.	15° Kal.	14° Kal.	12° Kal.
19	14° Kal.	14° Kal.	13° Kal.	11° Kal.
20	13° Kal.	13° Kal.	12° Kal.	10° Kal.
21	12° Kal.	12° Kal.	11° Kal.	9° Kal.
22	11° Kal.	11° Kal.	10° Kal.	8° Kal.
23	10° Kal.	10° Kal.	9° Kal.	7° Kal.
24	9° Kal.	9° Kal.	8° Kal.	6° Kal.
25	8° Kal.	8° Kal.	7° Kal.	5° Kal.
26	7° Kal.	7° Kal.	6° Kal.	4° Kal.
27	6° Kal.	6° Kal.	5° Kal.	3° Kal.
28	5° Kal.	5° Kal.	4° Kal.	Prid. Kal.
29	4° Kal.	4° Kal.	3° Kal.	
30	3° Kal.	3° Kal.	Prid. Kal.	
31	Prid. Kal.	Prid. Kal.		

NOTE. Every leap-year (called in Latin biſſextīlis) in which Feb. has 29 days, both the 24th and 25th day of that month are written ſexto [die ante] Kalendas Martias.

When we meet with *Kalendas*, *nonas*, or *idus*, in the accuſative caſe, the prepoſition *ante* is underſtood; as, *Tertio kalendas*, *nonas*, or *idus* is the ſame as *tertio die ante kalendas*, *nonas*, or *idus*.

N. B. The uſe of the genitive caſes, *kalendarum*, *nonarum*, *iduum*, for *kalendas*, *nonas*, *idus*, is not ſo common with the beſt writers.

Of the principal Parts of a Verb, and the Formation of the other Parts from them.

THERE are four principal parts in every complete verb in *o*, from which all the reſt are formed; viz. the *preſent indicative*, the *preſent infinitive*, the *preter-perfect indicative*, and the *ſupine in um*. Part II. Section vii. No. 17.

From the preſent indicative are formed the *preter-imperfect* and *future* of the ſame mode; the *imperative*; the *preſent* and *preter-imperfect* of the *ſubjunctive*; and the *infinitive*.

From the preſent and preter-imperfect infinitive are formed the *gerunds*, and the *participle of the preſent tenſe*.

From the preter-perfect indicative are formed the *preter-pluperfect* of the ſame mode; the *preter-perfect*, *preter-pluperfect*, and *future*, of the ſubjunctive; and the *preter-perfect* and *preter-pluperfect* of the infinitive.

From the ſupine in *um* are formed the ſupine in *u*; the preter-perfect and preter-pluperfect participle; and the participle of the future in *rus*.

From the participle of the preſent tenſe is formed the participle of the future in *dus*, by changing *s* final into *dus*.

The participle of the preſent tenſe is formed from the infinitive preſent, by changing *re* in the three firſt conjugations into *ns*; and in the fourth into *ens*.

The gerunds are formed, by changing the ſame in the three firſt conjugations into *ndi*, *ndo*, *ndum*; and in the fourth into *endi*, *endo*, *endum*.

N. B. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation form the participle of the preſent tenſe moſt eaſily from the firſt perſon ſingular of the indicative mode preſent tenſe, by changing *o* final into *ens*; and their gerunds, by changing it into *endi*, *endo*, *endum*.

*Conciſe Rules for the Gender of Nouns.**

1. THE names of *males* are maſculine; of *females*, feminine.

2. Nouns of the *firſt* and *fifth* declenſion are feminine.

Except the following, which are maſculine: *Adria, poēta, cŏmēta, pandecta, plănēta, mĕrīdies* (and *dies*, which is alſo feminine in the ſingular); alſo Greek nouns of the firſt declenſion ending in *as* or *es*; excepting the names of jewels, which are feminine.

3. Nouns of the *ſecond* and *fourth* declenſion are maſculine.

Feminines excepted are, *Abyſſus, acus, alvus, dŏmus, diphthongus, porticus, hŭmus, chryſtallus, carbăſus, fīcus, dialectus, ăddus, mănus, pĕriŏdus, methŏdus, trĭbus, sўnŏdus*, &c.

Doubtfuls excepted are, *Barbĭtus, bălănus, cămēlus, cŏlus, rŭbus, phăsēlus, ſpĕcus, groſſus, ătŏmus, pĕnus, pampĭnus*, &c.

4. Nouns ending in *um, u, on*, or *undeclined*, are neuter. So are *chaos, vīrus, pĕlăgus*, and *vulgus* (but *vulgus* is ſometimes maſculine), *ĕpos*, and *mĕlos*.

5. Nouns of the third declenſion ending in *er, or*, and *os*, are maſculine.

Exceptions. *Arbor* or *arbos, dos, cos, eos*, and *diămetros* are feminine. *Æquor, marmor, ădor, cor, lăſer, ĭter, tūber, pĭper, gingĭber, über, verber, sūber, cĭcer, sĭser, păpāver, ver, sŭler, ſpinther, cădāver, lăver, os* oris, and *os* oſſis, are neuter. *Linter* is doubtful; *cuſtos* and *bos* are common.

6. Nouns of the third declenſion ending in *o, as, es, is, x*, or *s* with a conſonant before it, are feminine.

Nouns in *o* excepted. *Optio* an officer, *pūgio, ſcīpio, tĭtio, ternio, sĕnio, ūnio* a pearl, *quăternio, pernio, pūſio, ſermo, ūdo, ordo, cardo*, and ſome others of the third declenſion, ending in *o*, are maſculine.

Nouns

* Principally taken from Clarke's Latin Grammar.

Nouns in *as* excepted. *Nĕfas, fas, vas* vafis, are neuter. Nouns in *as*, Gen. antis, are maſculine.

Nouns in *es* excepted. *Gurges, poples, verres, păries, līmes, fŭmes, termes, ăries, lĕbes, tăpes, palmes, trāmes, ceſpes, pes, ſtipes, antes, magnes, bes, acīnăces*, are maſculine. *Æs* is neuter. *Pălumbes* and *præs* are common. *Ames, trūdes*, and *tŭdes*, have no certain gender.

Nouns in *is* excepted. *Fuſtis, vermis, enſis, vectis, poſtis, faſcis, menſis, torris, caulis, lăpis, follis, axis, orbis, collis, pollis, glis, cŭcŭmis, vōmis, unguis, vepris, ſentis, ſanguis, piſcis, callis, cenchris*, and compounds from *as*, as, *centuſſis, dĕcuſſis*, are maſculine. *Torques, rētis, amnis, clūnis, corbis, pulvis, fūnis, anguis*, are doubtful.

Nouns in *x*, or *s* with a conſonant before it, excepted. *Dens, ſeps, grex, phœnix, fons, mĕrops, fornix, mons, hydrops, gryps, coccyx, pons, călix, călyx, chălybs, vārix, ſpādix, urpix, bĭdens* a fork, *torrens, trĭdens, ōriens, occĭdens*, and the compounds of *as*, as *dodrans*, are maſculine. *Natrix, bombyx, rŭdens, ſtirps*, and ſome others, ending in *x*, or *s* with a conſonant before it, are of the doubtful gende.

7. Nouns of the third declenſion ending in *a, c, e, l, n, ar, t, ur*, or *us*, are of the neuter gender.

Exceptions. *Sal, ſol, mūgil, fur, furfur, vultur, turtur, mus, lĕpus*, and ſome others of the like ending, are maſculine. *Sus* and *grus* are common. *Tellus, virtus, ſervĭtus, sĕnectus, ſubſcus, incus, pălus* ūdis, *jŭventus, pecus* ŭdis, *laus, fraus, sălus*, &c. are feminine.

N. B. Proper or particular nouns frequently take their gender from thoſe which are common or general; thus, becauſe *Deus* is maſculine, ſo is *Dis*. Proper names of rivers, months, and winds, are maſculine, as are uſually thoſe of mountains. Proper names of countries, cities, and iſlands, are commonly feminine; as are alſo common names of trees.

General Rules for the Preter-perfect Tense of Verbs in o.

In the first conjugation the preter-perfect tense ends in *ovi*; as, *amāre, amāvi.*

In the second conjugation the preter-perfect tense ends in *ui*; as, *monēre, monui.*

In the third conjugation,

If the present tense end in	*The preter-perfect tense ends in*
bo,	bi; as, lambo, lambi.
co,	ci; vinco, vici.
do,	di; mando, mandi.
go,	xi; jungo, junxi.
ho,	xi; traho, traxi.
lo,	ui; colo, colui.
mo,	ui; vomo, vomui.
no,	vi; sino, sivi.
po,	psi; scalpo, scalpsi.
quo,	qui; linquo, liqui.
ro,	vi; sero, sevi.
so,	sivi; arcesso, arcessivi.
sco,	vi; pasco, pavi.
to,	ti; verto, verti.
ecto,	exi; flecto, flexi.
vo,	vi; volvo, volvi.
xo,	ui; texo, texui.
cio,	ci; facio, feci.
dio,	di; fodio, fodi.
gio,	gi; fugio, fugi.
pio,	pi; capio, cepi.
rio,	ri; pario, peperi.
tio,	ssi; quatio, quassi.
uo,	ui; statuo, statui.

In

William Carroll

In the fourth conjugation the preter-perfect tenſe ends in *ivi*; as, audio, audīvi.

Verbs compounded have the ſame preter-perfect tenſe with the ſimple verbs; as, *docēre, docui; edocēre, edocui;* but if the ſimple verb double a ſyllable in the preter-perfect tenſe, the compound does not (uſually) double it.

General Rules for the Supines of Verbs in o.

THE firſt ſupine* ends according to the ending of the preter-perfect tenſe.

If the preter-perfect tenſe end in	*The firſt ſupine ends in*
bi,	*tum;* as, bibi, bibĭtum.
ci,	*ctum;* vici, victum.
di,	*ſum;* vidi, viſum.
gi,	*ctum;* legi, lectum.
li,	*ſum;* falli, falſum.
mi,	*tum;* emi, emptum.
ni,	*tum;* veni, ventum.
pi,	*tum;* cepi, captum.
qui,	*ctum;* liqui, lictum.
ri,	*ſum;* verri, verſum.
ſi,	*ſum;* viſi, viſum.
pſi,	*ptum;* ſcripſi, ſcriptum.
ti,	*tum;* ſteti, ſtātum.
vi,	*tum;* flavi, flātum.
ui,	*itum;* domui, domĭtum.
xi,	*ctum;* vinxi, vinctum.

Verbs compounded have the ſame ſupines with the ſimple verbs; as, *doctum, edoctum.*

The exceptions under theſe general rules are comprehended in the following Catalogue.

CATALOGUE.

* The latter ſupine is formed from the firſt, by caſting away m; as, amatum, amatu.

CATALOGUE.

A.

Abdo,	ĕre,	ĭdi,	ĭtum—act.	*to hide.*
Abŏleo,	ēre,	ui *and* ēvi,	ĭtum—act.	*to abolish.*
Abscondo,	ĕre,	di *and* dĭdi,	dĭtum *and* sum—act.	*to hide.*
Absŏleo, *or* Obsŏleo,	ēre,	ui *and* ēvi,	ētum—neut.	*to grow out of use.*
Accerso,	ĕre,	īvi,	ītum—act.	*to call.*
Adĭpiscor,	sci,	adeptus sum *vel* fui—	dep.	*to get.*
Adŏlesco,	ĕre,	ui *and* ēvi,	ultum—neut.	*to grow up.*
Agnosco,	ĕre,	ōvi,	ĭtum—act.	*to acknowledge.*
Ago,	ĕre,	ēgi,	actum—act.	*to do.*
Allĭcio,	ĕre,	exi *and* cui,	ectum—act.	*to allure.*
Alo,	ĕre,	ui,	altum *and* alĭtum—act.	*to nourish.*
Ambĭgo,	ĕre,	*præterito caret*—neut *and* act.		*to be in doubt.*
Amĭcio,	īre,	īvi,	ui *and* xi, ctum—act.	*to clothe.*
Ango,	ĕre,	xi,	ctum—act.	*to vex.*
Annuo,	ĕre,	ui,	*supinis caret*—act. *and* neut.	*to nod.*
Apĕrio,	ire,	ui,	tum—act.	*to open.*
Apiscor,	sci,	aptus sum *vel* fui—	dep.	*to get.*
Applico,	āre,	cui & āvi,	cĭtum & cātum—act.	*to apply.*
Arceo,	ēre,	ui,	*sup. car.*—act.	*to keep off.*
Arcesso,	ere,	īvi,	ītum—act.	*to call.*
Ardeo,	ēre,	si,	sum—neut. *and* act.	*to burn.*
Audeo,	ēre,	ausus sum *vel* fui—	neut. pass.	*to be bold.*
Augeo,	ēre,	xi,	ctum—act.	*to increase.*
Aveo,	ēre,	*pret. caret*—	neut.	*to desire.*

B.

Bĭbo,	ĕre,	bi,	bĭtum—act.	*to drink.*

C.

Cădo,	ĕre,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum—neut.	*to fall.*
Cædo,	ĕre,	cecīdi,	cæsum—act.	*to beat.*
Căleo,	ēre,	ui,	ĭtum—neut.	*to be hot.*

Calveo,

Calveo,	ēre,	vi & calvus ſum—neut.	*to be bald.*
Cambio,	īre,	pſi, pſum—act.	*to exchange.*
Căno,	ĕre,	cĕcĭni, cantum—act.	*to ſing.*
Căpeſſo,	ĕre,	īvi, ītum—act.	*to undertake.*
Căpio,	ĕre,	cēpi, captum—act.	*to take.*
Căreo,	ēre,	ui & caſſus ſum, ĭtum & caſſum—neut.	*to want.*
Carpo,	ĕre,	ſi, tum—act.	*to crop.*
Căveo,	ēre,	vi, cautum—neut.	*to beware.*
Cēdo,	ĕre,	ceſſi, ceſſum—neut.	*to yield.*
Cello,	ĕre,	cecŭli, culſum—act.	*to beat.*
Cenſeo,	ēre,	ui, ſum—act.	*to think.*
Cerno,	ĕre,	*pr. car.*—act.	*to perceive.*
Cieo,	ēre,	īvi, ĭtum—act.	*to incite.*
Claudo,	ĕre,	ſi, ſum—act.	*to ſhut.*
Cæno,	āre,	āvi *and* ātus ſum—act.	*to ſup.*
Coerceo,	ēre,	cui, cĭtum—act.	*to reſtrain.*
Cōgo,	ĕre,	ēgi, actum—act.	*to compel.*
Collido,	ĕre,	ſi, ſum—act.	*to beat together.*
Cŏlo,	ĕre,	ŭi, ultum—act.	*to worſhip.*
Comminiſcor,	ſci,	entus ſum—dep.	*to invent.*
Cōmo,	ĕre,	pſi, tum—act.	*to comb.*
Compĕrio,	īre,	ri, rtum—act.	*to find out.*
Compeſco,	ĕre,	cui, *ſup. car.*—act.	*to paſture together.*
Concĭno,	ĕre,	ui, entum—act.	*to ſing together.*
Concŭtio,	ĕre,	ſi, ſſum—act.	*to ſhake.*
Condo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, ĭtum—act.	*to lay up.*
Confiteor,	ēri,	feſſus ſum—dep.	*to confeſs.*
Conjĭcio,	ĕre,	ēci, ectum—act.	*to caſt together.*
Connīveo,	ēre,	īvi & ixi, *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to connive.*
Conquĭniſco,	ĕre,	exi, *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to nod with the head.*
Conſīdeo,	ēre,	ēdi, eſſum—neut.	*to ſit together.*
Conſŭlo,	ĕre,	ui, ultum—act.	*to conſult.*
Cŏquo,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to cook.*
Corrĭgo,	ĕre,	exi, ectum—act.	*to correct.*
Corrĭpio,	ĕre,	ui, eptum—act.	*to ſnatch.*
Crēdo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, ĭtum—act.	*to believe.*
Crĕpo,	āre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to crack.*
Cubo,	āre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to lie down.*
Cumbo,	ĕre,	cubui, cubĭtum—neut.	*to lie down.*
Cūpio,	ĕre & īre,	īvi, ītum—act.	*to deſire.*
Curro,	ĕre,	cŭcurri, curſum—neut.	*to run.*

Dēcĭpio,

D.

Dĕcĭpio,	ĕre,	ēpi, eptum—act.	*to deceive.*
Dēcerpo,	ĕre,	psi, ptum—act.	*to crop off.*
Dēdo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, ĭtum—act.	*to yield.*
Dēfĕtiscor,	sci,	fessus sum—dep.	*to be weary.*
Dēgo,	ĕre,	gi, *sup. car.*—act.	*to live.*
Dēleo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.	*to blot out.*
Dēlĭteo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to lie hid.*
Dēmo,	ĕre,	mpsi, mptum—act.	*to take away.*
Dēpango,	ĕre,	nxi *and* ēgi, actum—act.	*to fasten down.*
Dēposco,	ĕre,	poposci, poscĭtum—act.	*to require earnestly.*
Descisco,	ĕre,	īvi, ītum—neut.	*to revolt.*
Dēsĕro,	ĕre,	ui, ertum—act.	*to forsake.*
Dēsĭlio,	īre,	ui, īvi & ii, ultum—neut.	*to leap down.*
Dīco,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to speak.*
Differo,	erre,	distŭli, dilātum—act.	*to defer.*
Diffĭteor,	ēri,	fessus sum—dep.	*to deny.*
Digrĕdior,	di,	gressus sum—dep.	*to go aside.*
Dĭligo,	ĕre,	exi, ectum—act.	*to love.*
Dĭluo,	ĕre,	ui, ūtum—act.	*to wash* or *rinse.*
Disco,	ĕre,	didici, *sup. car.*—act.	*to learn.*
Dispergo,	ĕre,	si, sum—act.	*to scatter.*
Dispesco,	ĕre,	ui, *sup. car.* act.	*to drive beasts from pasture.*
Displĭceo,	ēre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to displease.*
Dīvĭdo,	ĕre,	īsi, īsum—act.	*to divide.*
Do,	āre,	dĕdi, ātum—act.	*to give.*
Dŏleo,	ēre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to grieve.*
Dŏmo,	āre,	ui *and* āvi, ĭtum *and* ātum—act.	*to tame.*
Dūco,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to lead.*

E.

Ēdisco,	ĕre,	didĭci, *sup. car.*—act.	*to learn by heart.*
Effĕro,	erre,	extŭli, elātum—act.	*to bring out.*
Ĕgeo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to want.*
Ēlĭcio,	ĕre,	cui, citum—act.	*to draw out.*
Ēmĭneo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—act. *and* neut.	*to excel.*
Ĕmo,	ĕre,	ēmi, emptum—act.	*to buy.*
Ēnītor,	ti,	īsus *and* xus sum—dep.	*To endeavour.*
Eo,	īre,	īvi, ĭtum—neut.	*To go.*

Erĭpio,

Ērĭpio,	ĕre,	ui, eptum—act.	*to ſnatch away.*
Ēsŭrio,	īre,	īvi, ītum—act.	*to hunger after.*
Excello,	ĕre,	ui, ſum—act.	*to excel.*
Exclūdo,	ĕre,	ſi, ſum—act.	*to exclude.*
Exculpo,	ere,	pſi, ptum—act.	*to carve.*
Excurro,	ĕre,	curri *and* cŭcurri, ſum—neut.	*to run out.*
Excŭtio,	ĕre,	uſſi, uſſum—act.	*to ſhake off.*
Exĕdo,	ĕre,	ēdi, ēſum—act.	*to eat up.*
Exerceo,	ēre,	cui, cĭtum—act.	*to exerciſe.*
Exĭgo,	ĕre,	ēgi, actum—act.	*to require.*
Exŏleſco,	ĕre,	ui *and* ēvi, ētum—neut.	*to grow out of uſe.*
Exŏleo,	ēre,	ui *and* ēvi, ētum—neut.	*to fade.*
Expergiſcor,	ſci,	rectus ſum—dep.	*to awake.*
Expĕrior,	īri,	ertus ſum—dep.	*to try.*
Explĭco,	āre,	āvi *and* ui, ātum and ĭtum—act.	*to explain.*
Exuo,	ĕre,	ui, ūtum—act.	*to put off.*

F.

Făceſſo,	ĕre,	ſi *and* sīvi, ſum *and* ītum—act.	*to diſpatch.*
Făcio,	ĕre,	fēci, factum—act.	*to make* or *do.*
Fallo,	ĕre,	fefelli, falſum—act.	*to deceive.*
Farcio,	īre,	ſi, tum *and* ctum—act.	*to ſtuff.*
Fătеor,	ēri,	faſſus ſum—dep.	*to confeſs.*
Fătiſco,	ĕre,	*præt. car.*—neut.	*to open, gape.*
Făveo,	ēre,	vi, fautum—neut.	*to favour.*
Fĕrio,	īre,	*præt. car.*—act.	*to ſtrike.*
Fĕro,	erre,	tŭli, lātum—act.	*to bear* or *ſuffer.*
Ferveo,	ēre,	vi *and* bui, *ſup. caret*—neut.	*to be hot.*
Ferveſco,	ĕre,	vi, *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to grow hot.*
Fīdo,	ĕre,	di *and* ſus ſum—neut. paſs.	*to truſt.*
Fīgo,	ĕre,	xi, xum—act.	*to fix,* or *faſten.*
Findo,	ĕre,	fĭdi, fiſſum—act.	*to cleave.*
Fingo,	ĕre,	nxi, ctum—act.	*to feign.*
Flāveo,	ēre,	āvi, *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to be yellow.*
Flecto,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to bend.*
Fleo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.	*to weep.*
Flo,	āre,	āvi, ātum—act.	*to blow.*
Fluo,	ĕre,	xi, xum *and* ctum—neut.	*to flow.*
Fŏdio,	ĕre,	ōdi, oſſum—act.	*to dig.*
Frango,	ĕre,	frēgi, fractum—act.	*to break.*

Frĭco,

Frĭco,	āre,	ui *and* āvi, ctum *and* ātum—act.	*to rub.*
Frīgeo,	ēre,	xi, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to be cold.*
Fruor,	i,	ctus *and* uĭtus sum—dep.	*to enjoy.*
Fŭgio,	ere,	gi, ĭtum—neut. *and* act.	*to flee.*
Fulcio,	īre,	si, tum—act.	*to prop.*
Fulgeo,	ēre,	si, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to shine.*
Fundo,	ĕre,	ūdi, ūsum—act.	*to pour out.*
Fŭro,	ĕre,	*pret. car.*—neut.	*to be mad.*

G.

Gaudeo,	ēre,	gavīsus sum—neut. pass.	*to rejoice.*
Gĕro,	ĕre,	ssi, stum—act.	*to bear.*
Gestio,	īre,	īvi, ītum—neut.	*to leap for joy.*
Gigno,	ĕre,	genui, genĭtum—act.	*to beget.*
Glisco,	ĕre,	*pret. car.*—neut.	*to grow or spread.*
Grădior,	di,	gressus sum—dep.	*to go.*

H.

Hæreo,	ēre,	si, sum—neut.	*to stick.*
Haurio,	īre,	si *and* īvi, stum *and* sum—act.	*to draw.*

I. & J.

Jăceo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to lie down.*
Jăcio,	ĕre,	ēci, actum—act.	*to cast.*
Īco,	ĕre,	ci, ctum—act.	*to strike.*
Immĭneo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to hang over.*
Impertio,	īre,	īvi, ītum—act.	*to bestow.*
Impingo,	ĕre,	ēgi, actum—act.	*to dash against.*
Impleo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.	*to fill.*
Inceſſo,	ĕre,	i *and* īvi, ītum—act.	*to provoke.*
Incĭdo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, casum—neut.	*to fall into.*
Incĭpio,	ĕre,	ēpi, eptum—act.	*to begin.*
Inculco,	āre,	āvi, ātum—act.	*to repeat often.*
Indĭgeo,	ēre,	gui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to want.*
Indo,	ĕre,	dĭdi, dĭtum—act.	*to put in.*
Indulgeo,	ēre,	si, sum—neut.	*to indulge.*
Ineptio,	īre,	īvi ītum—neut.	*to play the fool.*
Infĕro,	erre,	tŭli, illātum—act.	*to bring in.*

Inſĕro,

Insĕro,	ĕre,	ēvi,	ĭtum—act.	*to ingraft.*
Insĕro,	ĕre,	ŭi,	ertum—act.	*to ſet,* or *put in.*
Inſulto,	āre,	āvi,	ātum—act. *and* neut.	*to leap upon.*
Intellĭgo,	ĕre,	exi,	ectum—act.	*to underſtand.*
Īraſcor,	ci,	ātus,	ſum—dep.	*to be angry.*
Irruo,	ĕre,	ui,	ūtum—neut.	*to ruſh upon.*
Jŭbeo,	ēre,	ſſi,	ſſum—act.	*to order.*
Jungo,	ĕre,	nxi,	nctum—act.	*to join.*
Jŭvo,	āre,	vi,	tum—act.	*to help.*

L.

Lăbo,	āre,	*pr. car.*—neut.		*to decay.*
Lābor,	bi,	pſus ſum—dep.		*to ſlide.*
Lăceſſo,	ĕre,	ſi *and* ſīvi, ſītum—act.		*to provoke.*
Lăcio,	ĕre,	ui *and* xi, ĭtum *and* ctum—act.		*to enſnare.*
Lædo,	ĕre,	ſi, ſum—act.		*to hurt.*
Lambo,	ĕre,	bi, *ſup. car.*	act.	*to lick.*
Lăteo,	ēre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.		*to lie hid.*
Lăvo,	āre & ĕre,	vi & vāvi, lautum, lōtum & lavātum—act.		*to waſh.*
Leo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.		*to anoint.*
Lingo,	ĕre,	nxi, nctum—act.		*to lick.*
Līno,	ĕre,	līni, līvi and lēvi, lĭtum—act.		*to daub.*
Linquo,	ĕre,	līqui, lictum—act.		*to leave.*
Lĭquĕfio,	iĕri,	factus ſum—neut. paſſ.		*to be melted.*
Lĭquor,	qui,	*pr. car.* dep.		
Līveo,	ēre,	*pr. car.* neut.		*to be black* and *blue.*
Lŏquor,	qui,	cūtus ſum—dep.		*to ſpeak.*
Lūceo,	ēre,	xi, *ſup. car.*	neut.	*to ſhine.*
Lūdo,	ĕre,	ſi, ſum—act.		*to play.*
Lūgeo,	ēre,	xi, ctum—act.		*to mourn.*
Luo,	ĕre,	ui, ĭtum—act.		*to pay, ſuffer.*

M.

Mando,	ĕre,	di, ſum—act.		*to chew.*
Măneo,	ēre,	nſi, nſum—neut.		*to tarry.*
Marceſco,	ĕre,	marcui, *ſup. car.*	neut.	*to pine away.*
Mĕdeor,	ēri,	*pr. car.* dep.		*to heal.*
Meio,	ĕre,	*pret. car.* neut.		*to make water.*
Mĕreor,	ēri,	ui *and* ĭtus ſum—dep.		*to deſerve.*

Mētior,

Mĕtior,	īri,	tītus *and* nſus ſum—dep.	*to meaſure.*
Mēto,	ĕre,	ſſui, ſſum—act.	*to mow.*
Mĕtuo,	ĕre,	ui, *ſup. car.* act.	*to fear.*
Mĕtuor,	ui,	*pr. car.* paſs.	*to be feared.*
Mĭco,	are,	ui, *ſup. car.* neut.	*to ſhine.*
Micturio,	īre,	ivi & ii, ītum—neut.	*to have a deſire to make water.*
Mingo,	ĕre,	nxi, ctum—neut.	*to make water.*
Miſceo,	ēre,	cui ſtum *and* xtum—act.	*to mix.*
Mĭſĕreor,	ēri,	ertus ſum—dep.	*to pity.*
Mitto,	ĕre,	īſi, ſſum—act.	*to ſend.*
Mæreo,	ĕre,	mæſtus ſum—neut. paſs.	*to be ſad.*
Mordeo,	ēre,	mŏmordi, rſum—act.	*to bite.*
Mŏrior,	ri *and* rīri,	mortuus ſum—dep.	*to die.*
Mŏveo,	ēre,	ōvi, ōtum—act.	*to move.*
Mulceo,	ēre,	ſi, ſum—act.	*to aſſuage.*
Mulgeo,	ēre,	ſi *and* xi, ſum *and* ctum—act.	*to milk.*
Multĭplĭco,	āre,	āvi, ātum—act.	*to multiply.*

N.

Nanciſcor,	ſci,	nactus ſum—dep.	*to obtain.*
Naſcor,	ſci,	nātus ſum—dep.	*to be born.*
Nĕco,	āre,	āvi & ui, ātum & ctum—act.	*to kill.*
Necto,	ĕre,	xui & xi, xum—act.	*to knit.*
Neglĭgo,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to neglect.*
Neo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.	*to ſpin.*
Nexo,	āre,	ui, xum—act.	*to knit.*
Nĭdeo,	ēre,	*pr. car.* neut.	*to ſhine.*
Nigreo,	ēre,	ui, *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to grow black.*
Ningo,	ĕre,	nxi. *ſup. car.*—neut.	*to ſnow.*
Nītor,	i,	ſus & xus ſum—dep.	*to endeavour.*
Nŏceo,	ēre,	cui, cĭtum—neut.	*to hurt.*
Noſco,	ĕre,	ōvi, ōtum—act.	*to know.*
Nūbo,	ĕre,	pſi & pta ſum, ptum—act.	*to marry.*

O.

Obdo,	ĕre,	dĭdi, dĭtum—act.	*to bar.*
Oblīviſcor,	ſci,	oblītus ſum—dep.	*to forget.*
Occĭdo,	ĕre,	occīdi, occāſum—neut.	*to fall down.*
Occīdo,	ĕre,	occīdi, occīſum—act.	*to kill.*

Occlūdo,

Occlūdo, ĕre, ūsi, ūsum—act. *to shut up.*
Occŭlo, ĕre, ului, ultum—act. *to hide.*

Ŏlĕo, ēre, ŭi & ēvi, ĭtum & ētum—neut. *to give a smell.*
Olfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum—act. *to smell.*

Ŏpĕrio, īre, ui, rtum—act. *to cover.*
Oppango, ĕre, ēgi, actum—act. *to join to.*
Ordior, īri, orditus & orsus sum—dep. *to begin.*

Ŏrior, īri, ortus sum—dep. *to rise.*

P.

Păcisco, sci, pactus sum—dep. *to bargain.*
Pando, ere, di, nsum & ssum—act. *to open.*
Pango, ĕre, nxi, pegi & pepĕgi, pactum—act. *to drive in.*
Parco, ĕre, peperci, parsi & ui, sum & citum—neut. *to spare.*
Păreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum—neut. *to obey.*
Pario, ĕre & īre, peperi, rtum & ĭtum—act. *to bring forth.*
Partio, īre, īvi, ītum—act. *to divide.*
Partŭrio, īre, īvi, ītum—neut. *to be in labour.*
Pasco, ĕre, āvi, astum—act. *to feed.*
Păteo, ēre, ui, *sup. car.*—neut. *to be open.*
Pătior, ti, ssus sum—dep. *to suffer.*
Păveo, ēre, āvi, *sup. car.* act. & neut. *to fear.*
Pecto, ĕre, xi & xui, xum—act. *to comb.*
Pēdo, ĕre, pĕpēdi, ĭtum—neut. *to break wind.*
Pello, ĕre, pepŭli, pulsum—act. *to drive away.*
Pendeo, ēre, pĕpendi, sum—neut. *to hang.*
Pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, sum—act. *to weigh.*
Perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, ĭtum—act. *to lose.*
Pergo, ĕre, rexi, rectum—neut. *to go on.*
Pĕrimo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum—act. *to kill.*
Perpĕtior, ti, ssus sum—dep. *to suffer thoroughly.*
Persto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum—neut. *to persist.*
Pertingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum—neut. *to reach along.*
Pertundo, ĕre, ŭdi, ūsum—act. *to knock.*
Pessundo, ăre, dĕdi, dătum—act. *to overthrow.*
Pĕto, ĕre, īvi & ii, ītum—act. *to ask.*
Pingo, ĕre, nxi, ctum—act. *to paint.*
Pinso, ĕre, ui & si, nsum, stum & nsĭtum—act. *to knead.*
Plăceo, ēre, cui, cĭtum—neut. *to please.*

Plaudo, ĕre, si, sum—act. *to clap hands.*
Plecto, ĕre, xi & xui, xum—act. *to punish.*
Plico, āre, ui & āvi, cītum & ātum—act. *to fold.*
Pluo, ĕre, ui & ūvi, ūtum—neut. *to rain.*
Polleo, ēre, *pr. car.* neut. *to be able.*
Pōno, ĕre, sui, sĭtum—act. *to put.*
Posco, ĕre, pŏposci, poscĭtum—act. *to demand.*
Pōto, āre, āvi & potus sum, ātum & tum—act. *to drink.*
Præcurro, ĕre, ri & cŭcurri, sum—neut. *to run before.*
Præmĭneo, ēre, ui, *sup. car.*—neut. *to excel.*
Præsto, āre, stĭti, ĭtum & ātum—act & neut. *to perform.*
Prandeo, ēre, di & sus sum, sum—neut. *to dine.*
Prĕmo, ĕre, ssi, ssum—act. *to press.*
Prōdĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, *sup. car.*—act. *to lavish.*
Prōdo, ĕre, dĭdi, ĭtum—act. *to betray.*
Prŏfĭcisco, sci, ctus sum—dep. *to go a journey.*
Prōluo, ĕre, ui, ūtum—act. *to wash much.*
Prōmĭneo, ēre, ui, *sup. car.*—neut. *to hang over.*
Prōmo, ĕre, psi, ptum—act. *to draw.*
Psallo, ĕre, li, *sup. car.*—act. *to sing.*
Pueraſco, ĕre, *pr. car.*—neut. *to grow childish.*
Pungo, ĕre, nxi *and* pupŭgi, nctum—act. *To prick.*

Q.

Quæro, ĕre, sīvi, ītum—act. *to seek.*
Quătio, ĕre, ssi, ssum—act. *to shake.*
Queo, īre, īvi, ĭtum—neut. *to be able.*
Quĕror, ri, stus sum—dep. *to complain.*
Quīnisco, ĕre, quexi—*sup. car.*—neut. *to nod.*

R.

Rādo, ĕre, si, sum—act. *to shave.*
Raucio, īre, si, sum—neut. *to be hoarse.*
Recĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, āsum—neut. *to fall back.*
Recīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum—act. *to cut off.*
Reddo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum—act. *to restore.*
Rĕdŏleo, ēre, ui, ĭtum—neut. *to smell strong.*
Refello, ĕre, li, alsum—act. *to disprove.*
Refringo, ĕre, ēgi, actum—act. *to break open.*
Rĕgo, ere, xi, ctum—act. *to rule.*

Rejĭcio,

Rejĭcio,	ĕre,	ēci,	ctum—act.	*to reject.*
Rĕmĭniſcor,	ſci,	*pr. car.*—dep.		*to remember.*
Rĕnuo,	ĕre,	ui,	ūtum—neut.	*to nod back.*
Reor,	ēri,	rătus ſum—dep.		*to ſuppoſe.*
Rĕpango,	ĕre,	ēgi *and* nxi,	actum—act.	*to faſten again.*
Rĕpĕrio,	īre,	ĕri,	ertum—act.	*to find.*
Replĭco,	āre,	ui *and* āvi,	ĭtum *and* ātum—act.	*to unfold.*
Reprĭmo,	ere,	ſi,	ſſum—act.	*to reſtrain.*
Rĕpungo,	ĕre,	pupŭgi *and* nxi,	nctum—act.	*to prick again.*
Reſpĭcio,	ĕre,	exi,	ectum—act.	*to look back.*
Reſpondeo,	ēre,	di,	ſum—neut.	*to anſwer.*
Reſpuo,	ĕre,	ui,	ūtum—act.	*to refuſe.*
Reſto,	āre,	ĭti,	ĭtum *and* ātum—neut.	*to remain.*
Rĕſulto,	āre,	āvi,	ātum—neut.	*to rebound.*
Rĕtĭceo,	ēre,	cui,	ĭcĭtum—neut.	*to be ſilent.*
Rĕtĭneo,	ēre,	ui,	entum—act.	*to retain.*
Rīdeo,	ēre,	ſi,	ſum—act *and* neut.	*to laugh.*
Ringo,	ĕre,	nxi,	ctum—neut.	*to grin.*
Rōdo,	ĕre,	si,	ſum—act.	*to gnaw.*
Rŭdo,	ĕre,	di *and* īvi,	*ſup. car.*—neut.	*to bray as an aſs.*
Rumpo,	ĕre,	ūpi,	uptum—act.	*to break.*
Ruo,	ĕre,	ui,	ūtum *and* uĭtum.	*to ruſh.*

S.

Sălio,	īre,	ui,	īvi *and* ii, altum—neut.	*to leap.*
Sălio & ſallio,	īre,	īvi,	ītum—act.	*to ſalt.*
Sallo,	ĕre,	lli,	lſum—act.	
Sancio,	īre,	īvi *and* nxi,	ītum *and* nctum—act.	*to eſtabliſh.*
Săpio,	ĕre,	ii, ui *and* īvi,	*ſup. car.*—neut.	*to be wiſe.*
Sarcio,	īre,	si,	tum—act.	*to repair.*
Sătăgo,	ĕre,	ēgi,	*ſup. car.*—neut.	*to be buſy.*
Scăbo,	ĕre,	bi,	*ſup. car.*—act.	*to ſcratch.*
Scalpo,	ĕre,	pſi,	ptum—act.	
Scando,	ĕre,	di,	ſum—act.	*to climb.*
Scătŭrio,	īre,	īvi,	*ſup. car.*—neut.	*to flow abroad.*
Scindo,	ĕre,	idi,	ſcum—act.	*to cut.*
Scrĭbo,	ĕre,	pſi,	ptum—act.	*to write.*
Sĕco,	āre,	ui,	ctum—act.	*to cut.*
Sĕdeo,	ēre,	ēdi,	ſum—neut.	*to ſit.*
Sentio,	īre,	ſi,	ſum—act.	*to perceive.*

Sĕpĕlio,

Sĕpĕlio,	īre,	īvi, ultum—act.	*to bury.*
Sēpio,	īre,	īvi *and* psi, ītum *and* ptum—act.	*to hedge in.*
Sĕnesco,	ĕre,	sĕnŭi, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to grow old.*
Sĕquor,	qui,	quūtus sum—dep.	*to follow.*
Sĕro,	ĕre,	ēvi, ătum—act.	*to sow.*
Sĕro,	ĕre,	ui, rtum—act.	*to lay in order.*
Sīdo,	ĕre,	sīdi & sēdi, sessum—neut.	*to settle.*
Singultio,	īre,	īvi, ultum—neut.	*to sob.*
Sĭno,	ĕre,	īvi, ĭtum—act.	*to suffer.*
Sisto,	ĕre,	stĭti, stătum—neut. & act.	*to stop.*
Sŏleo,	ēre,	ĭtus sum—neut. pass.	*to be accustomed.*
Solvo,	ĕre,	vi, ūtum—act.	*to free.*
Sŏno,	āre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to sound.*
Sorbeo,	ēre,	ui & psi, ptum—act.	*to suck in.*
Spargo,	ĕre,	si, sum—act.	*to scatter.*
Spĕcio,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to behold.*
Sperno,	ĕre,	sprēvi, sprētum—act.	*to despise.*
Spondeo,	ēre,	spŏspondi, sum—act.	*to promise.*
Stătuo,	ĕre,	ui, ūtum—act.	*to appoint.*
Sterno,	ĕre,	strāvi, strātum—act.	*to strow.*
Sterto,	ĕre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to snort.*
Sto,	āre,	stĕti, stătum—neut.	*to stand.*
Strĕpo,	ĕre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to make a noise.*
Strīdeo,	ēre,	di, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to crack,*
Strīdo,	ĕre,	di, *sup. car.*—neut.	or *creak.*
Stringo,	ĕre,	nxi, ctum—act.	*to grasp.*
Struo,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to build.*
Suādeo,	ēre,	si, sum—act.	*to persuade.*
Suesco,	ĕre,	suēvi & suētus sum, suētum—neut.	*to accustom.*
Sūgo,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to suck.*
Sūmo,	ĕre,	psi, ptum—act.	*to take.*
Supplĭco,	āre,	āvi, ātum—act.	*to beseech.*
Surgo,	ĕre,	rexi, rectum—neut.	*to arise.*

T.

Tăceo,	ēre,	ui, ĭtum—act. & neut.	*to be silent.*
Tango,	ĕre,	tĕtĭgi, tactum—act.	*to touch.*
Temno,	ĕre,	psi, ptum—act.	*to despise.*
Tendo,	ĕre,	tĕdendi, sum & tum—act.	*to stretch.*
Tĕneo,	ēre,	ui, ntum—act.	*to hold.*

Tĕpeo,

Tĕpeo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to be warm.*
Tĕpesco,	ĕre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to grow warm.*
Tergeo,	ēre,	si, sum—act.	*to wipe.*
Tĕro,	ĕre,	trīvi, trītum—act.	*to wear.*
Texo,	ĕre,	ui & xi, xtum—act.	*to weave.*
Timeo,	ēre,	ui, *sup. car.*—act.	*to fear.*
Timeor,	ēri,	*pr. car.* pass.	*to be feared.*
Titŭbo,	āre,	āvi & ātus sum, ātum—neut.	*to stumble.*
Tollo,	ĕre,	sustŭli, sublātum—act.	*to take away.*
Tondeo,	ēre,	tŏtondi, sum—act.	*to clip.*
Tŏno,	āre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to thunder.*
Torqueo,	ēre,	si, sum & tum—act.	*to twist.*
Torreo,	ēre,	ui, tostum—act.	*to roast.*
Trādo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, ĭtum—act.	*to deliver.*
Trăho,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to draw.*
Trĕmo,	ĕre,	ui, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to tremble.*
Trūdo,	ĕre,	si, sum—act.	*to thrust.*
Tueor,	ēri,	tutus & tuĭtus sum—dep.	*to see, defend.*
Tuor,	ui,	tutus & tuĭtus sum—dep.	*to see.*
Tundo,	ĕre,	tŭtŭdi, nsum & ūsum—act.	*to beat.*
Turgeo,	ēre,	si, *sup. car.*—neut.	*to swell.*

V.

Vā[illegible],	ĕre,	si, sum—neut.	*to go.*
Văleo,	ēre,	ui, ĭtum—neut.	*to be in health.*
Vĕho,	ĕre,	xi, ctum—act.	*to carry.*
Vello,	ĕre,	li & ulsi, ulsum—act.	*to pluck.*
Vendo,	ĕre,	ĭdi, ĭtum—act.	*to sell.*
Vēneo,	īre,	venii, vēnum—neut.	*to be sold.*
Vĕnio,	īre,	ni, ntum—neut.	*to come.*
Vergo,	ĕre,	si, sum—neut.	*to bend.*
Verro,	ĕre,	ri, rsum—act.	*to brush.*
Verto,	ĕre,	ti, sum—act.	*to turn.*
Vescor,	sci,	*pr. car.*—dep.	*to eat.*
Vĕto,	āre,	ui, ĭtum—act.	*to forbid.*
Vĭdeo,	ēre,	di, sum—act.	*to see.*
Vieo,	ēre,	ēvi, ētum—act.	*to bind with twigs.*
Vincio,	īre,	nxi, nctum—act.	*to bind.*
Vinco,	ĕre,	vīci, victum—act.	*to overcome.*
Vīso,	ĕre,	si, sum—act.	*to visit.*

Vīvo,	ĕre,	xi,	ctum—neut.	*to live.*
Ulciſcor,	ſci,	ultus ſum—dep.		*to revenge.*
Volvo,	ĕre,	vi,	ūtum—act.	*to roll.*
Vŏmo,	ĕre,	ui,	ĭtum—act.	*to vomit.*
Urgeo,	ēre,	ſi,	ſum—act.	*to urge.*
Ūro,	ĕre,	uſſi,	uſtum—act.	*to burn.*
Ūtor,	ūti,	uſus ſum—dep.		*to uſe.*

Such verbs as ſignify a deſire or endeavour to do any thing, are called *deſideratives;* as, ēsŭrio, *I am hungry*, or *deſire to eat.* They are formed from the latter ſupine, by adding *rio.*

Frequentatives are ſuch verbs as ſignify the doing of a thing much or often; as, clāmĭto, *I cry often.*

Imitatives are ſuch verbs as ſignify doing like the noun from which they are derived; as, græcor, *I act as the Greeks do.*

Inceptives are ſuch verbs as ſignify that a thing is begun, and the action tending to perfection; as, caleſco, *I grow warm.* They are formed from the ſecond perſon ſingular, indic. preſ. tenſe, by adding *co;* thus, căleo, căles, *căleſco.*

Various

Various Signification and Conſtruction of Verbs.

TAKEN FROM

ADAM's RUDIMENTS OF LATIN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam and laudem, *to aim at;* in curiam, *to deſire to be admitted,* Cic; equis achillis, *to wiſh for;* labori ejus, *to favour;* amorem dictis, *ſc.* ei, *to infuſe,* Virg.

DESPERARE ſibi, de ſe; ſalutem, ſaluti, de ſalute, *to deſpair of.*

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to ſend as an ambaſſador;* aliquem ſibi, *to make his lieutenant;* pecuniam alicui, *i. e.* teſtamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice *legantur* homines; qui inde *legati* dicuntur: privatim *allegantur;* unde *allegati.*

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay;* laborem alteri, *to lay upon;* aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus and ei, eum metu, *to eaſe.*

MUTARE locum, ſolum, *to be baniſhed;* aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange;* veſtem, i. e. ſordidam togam induere, Liv. veſtem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break.*

OBNUNCIARE comitiis *vel* concilio, i. e. comitia auſpiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating theſe words,* ALIO DIE; Conſuli *v.* magiſtratui; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promiſe;* aliquid edicto, *to order;* ſententias, *to ſum up the opinions of the ſenators,* Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell;* conſulem, *to declare, to name;* vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up;* muneri, hoſpitio, *to refuſe;* repudium ei, *to divorce.*

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to ſeize;* ſe in aliquo negotio, *to be employed;* ſe ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecuniam alicui *v.* apud aliquem grandi fœnore, *to give at intreſt,* Cic. occupat facere bellum, tranſire in agrum hoſtium, *begins firſt, anticipates,* Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE ſaltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to ſeize beforehand,* Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former ſentence or trial,* Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, and de ea re; id ab eo; ſalutem, and pro ſalute, Cic. legem, *to propoſe; hence,* UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to paſs it;* militem ſacramento, *to adminiſter the military oath;* Roget quis; *if any one ſhould aſk.* Comitia rogandis conſulibus, *for electing,* Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *ſeldom* legi, *to diſannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part;* multam, *to take off a fine;* imperium ei, *to take from.*

ABROGARE id ſibi, *to claim.*

DEROGARE aliquid legi, *v.* de lege, *to repeal or take away ſome clauſe of a law;* lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, *v.* de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit;* ex æquitate; ſibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from.*

ERO-

Erogare pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

Irrogare multam ei, *to impose.*

Obrogare legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

Prorogare imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

Subrogare aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause*, or *to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars, cæpti, *sc.* operis, *remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

Temperare iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc.* in, *to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum famæ, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*; Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall*, &c. cognitores honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*; Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely* lethum alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id. aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*, verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum *vel* domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas, secundas, &c. (*sc.* partes) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*; Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, *tell us*, Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go*; solertem

ſolertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum ſolvi, *to give ſecurity that what the judge has determined ſhall be paid*, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, *v.* pro aliquo, *to ſide with, to be of the ſame party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in ſententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to ſtand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; ſtare, *v.* conſtare animo, *to be in his ſenſes*: Non ſtat per me quo minus pecunia ſolvatur, *It is not owing to me that*, &c. multorum ſanguine ea Pœnis victoria ſtetit, *coſt*, Liv. Mihi ſtat alere morbum deſinere, *I am reſolved*, Nep.

ADSTARE menſæ, *to ſtand by*; ad menſam, in conſpectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to conſiſt of*; ſecum, *to be conſiſtent with*, Cic. liber conſtitit *v.* ſtetit mihi duobus aſſibus; *coſt me*; non conſtat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio conſtat, *the ſum is right*. Conſtat, impers. *It is evident, certain*, or *agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam poſteritatis, *to remain*, Cic. ſepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, *to preſs on the vanquiſhed*; rectam viam, *to be in the right way*; currum Marti, *to make ſpeedily*, Virg.; inſtat factum, *inſiſts that it was done*, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder*.

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform*; alicui, *v.* aliquem virtute, *to excel*; ſilentium ei, *to give*; auxilium, *to grant*, Juv. impenſas, *to defray*; iter tutum, *to procure*; ſe incolumem, *to preſerve*; ſe virum, *i. e.* præbere, exhibere; amorem, *v.* benevolentiam alicui, *to ſhew*; culpam, *v.* damnum, *i. e.* in ſe transferre, *to take on one's ſelf*; præſtabo de me; eum facturum, *I will be anſwerable*. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipî ſunt, is periculum judicii præſtare debet, qui ſe nexu obligavit, *In recovering*, or *in an action to recover thoſe things which are transferable, the ſeller ought to take upon himſelf the hazard of a trial*, Cic. *N. B.* Thoſe things were called, Res mancîpî, *(contracted for* mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) *the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another*; *as houſes, lands, ſlaves, &c.*

Præſtat, impers. i. e. *it is better*: Præſto eſſe alicui, adv. *to be preſent, to aſſiſt*; Libri proſtant venales, *the books are expoſed to ſale*.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near*; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis and ova, *to ſit upon*; ſtratis and ſuper ſtrata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in BEO.

HABERE ſpem, febrim, ſinem, bonum exitum, tempus, conſuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, *v.* inter manus, *to have*; gratiam & gratum, *to have a grateful ſenſe of a favour*; judicium, *to hold a trial*; honorem ei, *to honour*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.; fidem alicui, *to truſt or believe*; curam de *v.* pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to ſtand candidate for an office*; rationem, *v.* rem cum aliquo, *to have buſineſs with*; ſatis, *to be ſatisfied*; orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a ſpeech*; aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate*; ludibrio, *to mock*; id religioni, *to have*

have a scruple about it: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. *sc.* sibi; se bene v. graviter, *to be well or ill*; se parcè and duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. procerto, *to know for certain*; aliquem contemptui, despicatui, -um, v. in despicatum, *to despise*; excusatum, *to excuse*; susque deque, *to scorn, to slight*; Ut res se habet, *stands, is*; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs*; Hæc habeo, v. hâbui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce.*

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use*; in convivium v. consilium, *to admit*; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply*; vinum ægrotis, *to give*; aures verbis, *to bear with taste*; cultum and preces diis, *to offer*, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass*; regem, *to choose*; aliquem salvere, *to wish one health*; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, and de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latinis and Græcis literis; Latinè and Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wise*, Cic. De hoc tu videris, *consider, be answerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see*; visus sum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur feciſſe, *guilty*, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei *vel* cum, *to envy.*

PROVIDERE and prospicere id, *to foresee*; ei, *to provide for*; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene sedet, *fits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, *to sit by*, Sal. Assidet insano, *is near* or *like to*, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree.*

INSIDERE equo, and in equo, *to sit upon*; locum, Liv. in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed.*

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitui, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over.*

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend*; de, ex, ab and in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens.*

SPONDERE and despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth.*

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*, Cic. animo and -is, *to promise, to hope*; animum and -os, *to despair*; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer*; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes*; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of.*

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*, lex valet, *is in force*; quid verbum valeat,

apu

non video, *significas*; valet decem talenta, *or ofteuer* talentis, *is worth*; vale *vel* valeas, *farewell*; *or ironically*, *away with you.*

EMINĒRE aliqua re *vel* in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cæteros, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent*, *to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above.* Imminere alicui, *to hang over*, *to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek*, *to watch for.*

TENĒRE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *&c.* in, *to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand*, *to remember*; linguam, *but not* suam, silentium, se in silentio, *to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea*, *to hold*, *to be master of*; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *prevails.*

ABSTINĒRE maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for* meus, fratris est, *belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *reach.*

SUSTINĒRE personam judicis, nomen consulatûs, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in mora, *to defer.*

MANĒRE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to*, *to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium and industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERĒRE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death.*

HÆRĒRE lateri; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRĒRE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum *vel* jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVĒTE ore, *vel* linguis, *&c.* mihi, *attend in silence*, or *abstain from words of a bad omen.*

Cavere aliquid, aliquem, *vel* ab aliquo, *to guard against*, *to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for*, *to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo *vel* per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, *&c.* ne, *see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, *vel* mea cautio est, *I must take care.*

CONNIVĒRE ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; teſtamentum, nomen, foſſam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, *to make*; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. ſe hilarem, *to ſhew*, Ter. ſe divitem, miſerum, pauperem, *to pretend*, Cic. æs alienum, *v.* contrahere, conflare, *to contract debt*; animos, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to loſe*; naufragium, *to ſuffer*; ſumptum, *to ſpend*; gratum alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to diſpenſe with*; juſta *vel* funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an eſtate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, *v.* inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, ſancire, firmare, &c. *to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*; verba, *to ſpeak*; audientiam ſibi, Cic. negotium, et faceſſere, *to trouble*; aliquid miſſum, *to paſs over*; aliquem miſſum, *to diſmiſs* or *excuſe*; ad aliquid, *rarely* alicui, *to be fit or uſeful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; palam ſuis, *to make known*; Nep. ſtipendium pedibus, *v.* equo, & merere, *to ſerve in the army*; ſacra, ſacrificium, *v.* rem divinam, *to ſacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, verſus, &c. *to write a play*, &c. copiam conſilii ei, *to offer advice*; copiam *vel* poteſtatem dicendi legatis, *to grant leave*; fidem, *to procure* or *give credit*; periculum, *to make trial*; poteſtatem ſui, *to expoſe himſelf*, Nep. aliquem loquentem, *v.* loqui, *to ſuppoſe* or *repreſent*, Cic. piraticam, *ſc.* rem, *to be a pirate*; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an uſurer, a phyſician*, &c. verſuram, *to contract a new debt to diſcharge an old one, to borrow money at great intereſt*, Cic. cum *v.* ab aliquo, *to fide with*; contra *v.* adverſus, *to oppoſe*; nomen *v.* nomina, *to borrow money*, and alſo, *to ſettle accounts*, i. e. rationes acceptarum, *ſc.* pecuniarum & expenſarum inter ſe conferre; nomen in litura, *to write it where ſomething was before*, Cic. pedem *v.* pedes, *to trim the ſails*, Virg. Fac ita eſſe, *ſuppoſe it is ſo*; obvius fieri alicui, *to meet*; ne longum, *v.* longa faciam, ut breve faciam, *not to be tedious*; equus non facit, *will not move*, Cic. Fac velle, *ſc.* me, *ſuppoſe me to be willing*, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praiſe, honour*, &c. *to diſgrace, puniſh*, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

CONFICERE bellum, *to finiſh*; orationes, *to compoſe*, Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raiſe, to get*: alſo *to ſpend*, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hoſtium, *to deſtroy*; alteram Curiatium, *to kill*, Liv. Qui ſtipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *had ſerved out their time*, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi *vel* me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

INFICERE ſe vitro, *to ſtain*: Infectus, part. *ſtained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

OFFICERE alicui, *to hinder or hurt*; Diogeni apricanti, *to ſtand betwixt him and the ſun*; auribus, viſui, *to ſtop or obſtruct*; Umbra terræ ſoli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, *to ſet over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philoſophia, & progreſſus facere, *to make progreſs*.

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, ſaucios, ſe, jumenta, *to refreſh, to recover*.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma *v.* vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Cellatini ſuffectus eſt, *was ſubſtituted*, Liv. Filius patri ſuffectus, Tac. Oculos ſuffecti ſanguine & igne, *ſc.* ſecundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in *v.* de aliqua re, *to ſatisfy*; fidei, promiſſo, *to perform*.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, and ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to caſt*.

ADJICERE, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum ſtudiis, *to apply*; ſacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE ſe in pedes, *v.* fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

INJICERE manus ei, *to lay on*: ſpem, ardorem, ſuſpicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inſpire*; admirationem ſui cuivis ipſo aſpectu, Nep.

OBJICERE ſe hoſtibus, in *v.* ad omnes caſus, *to oppoſe* or *expoſe*: crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

REJICERE tela in hoſtes, *to throw back*; judices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad ſenatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to ſet a hen*; ſe imperio alicujus, *to ſubmit*; teſtamenta, *to forge*; teſtes, *to ſuborn*; partes *v.* ſpecies generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or claſs under*; aliquid ei, *to ſuggeſt*; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare: odio civium, *to expoſe*: bona Pomperii *v.* fortunas haſtæ *vel* voci and ſub voce præconis, *to expoſe to public ſale*, Cic. ſub haſta venire, *to be ſold*, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias *v.* exercitum, fluvium, Helleſpontum, *vel* trans fluvium, *to tranſport*: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus eſt, *paſſed or failed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, conſilium, dolorem, fugam, ſpecimen, ſpem, ſedem, &c. *to gueſs, conſult, grieve, fly, eſſay, hope, ſit*, &c. augurium, *v.* auſpicium, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum caſtris; terram, *to alight*: inſulam, ſumma, *ſc.* loca, *to reach*: ſpolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magiſtratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem veſtalem, *to chooſe*: amentiam, ſpiritus, ſuperbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem, conſilio, perfidia, *to catch*: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the houſe hardly contains us*: Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the ſame letter*, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, *to hear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to underſtand in a good ſenſe*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorſum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, *v.* rude donari, *to be diſcharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene *v.* male, *to treat*: eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*;

bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to ſtand candidate*; omen, *to eſteem good*; ſatisfactionem *v.* excuſationem, Cæſ. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular.*

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to preſcribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to beget enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hoſpitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum ſpiritum cognatorum; ſanguinem paterâ, *to keep* or *gather*; notis, and ſcribere, *to write in ſhort hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *ſucceeded*; ſic excepit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin.* Percipere fructus, *to reap.*

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foreſee*; gaudia, ſpem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæſ. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, *v.* de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach.*

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*; ſe *v.* pedem, *to retreat*; ſe domum, *to return*; ſe, mentem, animum, *to come to one's ſelf again, to recover ſpirits*; in ſe, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promiſe*; ſe ad frugem, *to amend*; ſenem ſeſſum, *to give a ſeat to*, Cic.

RAPERE *vel* trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worſt ſenſe*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter ſe, *to ſhare*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Horat.

U O.

EXUERE veſtes ſibi, ſe veſtibus; jugum ſibi, ſe jugo, *to caſt off*; fidem, ſacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hoſtem caſtris, *to beat from.*

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum; cæteros, Ter. ſpumas, *to drive or toſs*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to ſuffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam ſuam *vel* alterius, morte, ſanguine, *to expiate, to atone or ſuffer for.*

ELUERE amicitias remiſſione uſûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE ſtipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, *vel* -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to ſet* or *place*, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to ſettle*; agmen pauliſper, *to make to ſtop or halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me conſtituit domum, *appointed, reſolved*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam conſtituit, tollet eadem, *makes, conſtitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene conſtitutum, *a good conſtitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forſake*; ſpem, *to deceive*; propoſitum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem ſecundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, ſacra, *to inſtitute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to inſtruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæſ. ſermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to ſettle*; antequam pro Murœna dicera inſtituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, *to preſcribe to the proſecutor what form of proceſs he ſhould uſe*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine.*

RESTITUERE exules; virginem ſuis, *to reſtore*; oppida vicoſque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to ſubſtitute* or *put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to raise against.*

B O.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; bellum, *v.* de bello; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v.* -e, *to make free.*

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare, *v.* constituere; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle* or *name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw.*

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join* or *take part in an accusation*; Cæsaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

C O.

DICERE aliquid, *v.* de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad *v.* apud aliquem; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to administer justice, to pronounce sentence*; mulctam ei, *to amerce* or *fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; nomidem *loqui* est ac *dicere, to harangue*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom* sacramentum, *to take the military oath.*

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v.* in servitutem, *to sentence* or *adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*; aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, *v.* ad cœnam, *to propose supping with one without invitation.*

EDICERE alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitium, diem comitiis, *vel* comitia consulibus creandis, *to appoint.*

INDICERE bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to shew*; Indictus, an adj. *not said*; causâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ condemnari, *to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid *v.* aliqua re; fœminis usum purpuræ, *to forbid* or *debar from*; ei aquâ and igne, *v.* aquam et ignem, *to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat socero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, *to foretell, to forewarn.*

DUCERE

DUCERE in carcerem v. vincula, *to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; ſpiritum, animam, vitam, *to breathe, to live*; foſſam, murum, ſulcum, *to make* or *draw*; bellum, *to prolong*, alſo *to carry on*, Virg. ætatem, diem, *to ſpend*; uxorem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to ſummon before a judge*; aliquem, and vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. *to make a ſtatue*; genus, nomen ab v. ex aliquo, *to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, infra ſe; id ei laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, *eſteem the firſt, to reckon it a praiſe to him*; in conſcientiam, *to impute to a conſciouſneſs of guilt*; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centeſimas, *ſc.* uſuras, *vel* fœnus centeſimis, *to compute intereſt at one for the hundred a month*; or *at* 12 *per cent. per annum*; binis centeſimis fœnerari, *to take* 24 *per cent. per annum*, Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, *to draw out*, Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv. ilia, *to pant like a broken winded horſe*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial*; in ſuſpicionem regi, Nep. arcum, *to draw in*; habenas, *to ſtraiten the reins*.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, *to convey*; navem, domum, coquos, *to hire*; columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price*: Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in v. ad rem, *is of advantage*.

DEDUCERE naves, *to launch*; claſſem in prælium, *to bring*, Nep. equites, *to make to alight*, Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home*; de ſententia, Cic. coloniam, *to tranſplant*; lacum, *to drain*.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, *to draw*; florem Italiæ, *to lead out*; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, *to educate, often* educare; in aſtra, *to extol*, Hor. cœlo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clariſſimis rebus, *to bring on*, Cic. animum, v. in animum, *to perſuade himſelf*; ſcuta pellibus, *to cover*, Cæſ. ſolcas pedibus, v. in pedes, *to put on*; colorem picturæ, *to varniſh*, Plin. nomina, *to cancel* or *raſe, to rub out*.

OBDUCERE exercitum, *to lead againſt*; callum dolori, *to blunt it*; ſepulchrum ſentibus, *to cover*.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel* alicui aliquid in memoriam, *to bring back to one's remembrance*; in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile*; Vallis reducta, *retired* or *low*.

PRODUCERE teſtes, *to bring out*; funus, *to attend*; ſermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiemem, *to defer*; ſervos vendendos, *to bring to market*.

SUBDUCERE ſe a cuſtodibus, *to ſteal away*; naves, *to draw up on ſhore*; cibum ei and deducere, *to take from*; ſummam, rationes, *to reckon, to caſt up accounts*.

PARCERE ſibi, labore, *to ſpare*, &c. a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in v. ad hoc, *to be accuſtomed*; mentem pluribus and aſſuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. *to accuſtom*. So inſueſco rei v. re; inſuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree: hence* plebiſcitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to aſſume*; ſocios ſibi, ad ſocietatem ſceleris, *to aſſociate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

CONSCISCERE mortem v. necem ſibi, *to kill one's ſelf*; fugam ſibi, *to flee*, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without* ex; Dediſcere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediſcere, *to get by heart*.

DESCENDERE

DESCENDERE de palatio, præſidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accuſandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourſe to*, Cic.

DO.

LUDERE aleâ, *v.* -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to loſe one's labour.*

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem; Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock.*

EVADERE inſidias, -iis, vel ex, *to eſcape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hæc quorſum evadant, neſcio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evaſit, *became.*

CEDERE multa multis de ſuo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence* ceſſio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *v.* locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes.*

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad *v.* in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, ſententiæ, *v.* ad ſententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the queſtorſhip, or the firſt public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendſhip of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur acceſſit ætati, Cic. Animi acceſſere hoſti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona acceſſerant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eo, accedit quod, *is added.*

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely* alicui, *to excel.*

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paullum de ſuo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in ſententiam ejus, *to come into one's meaſures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE tranſverſum, and latum unguem, *v.* digitum a re, *to depart in the leaſt.*

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative againſt, to oppoſe a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become ſurety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia *vel* inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to ſucceed*; muro, *v.* murum; ad urbem; ſub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to.*

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, and litem perdere, *to loſe one's cauſe, to be caſt*; in *v.* ſub ſenſum, oculos, poteſtatem, &c. in morbum, and incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quaſi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, *v.* ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus *v.* ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, caſu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te iſtud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to ſtretch*; inſidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay ſnares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, curſum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, *ſc.* tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hoſtium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's ſelf*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to aſk earneſtly*; inter ſe: amori, poet. *for* cum amore, *to ſtrive*; cauſas, *ſc.* inter ſe, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, and alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to underſtand*: rem pluribus

and luculentioribus verbis, *to expreſs*; aliquem, humanitate amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to diſcover*.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad *v.* in rem, *to apply*; Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem *v.* litem alicui *vel* in aliquem, *alſo* impingere, *to raiſe a law-ſuit againſt one*; telum ei, *v.* in eum, *to ſhoot at*; manum *v.* digitum in aliquid, *to point at*; aliquo, *ſc.* ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, *v.* rem velo, *to cover, to veil.*

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to ſuffer*; id parvi, *to value it little.*

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, *v.* ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, *vel* ſuſpenſum detinere, *to keep in ſuſpenſe*; ædificium, *to arch a houſe*; naſo adunco, *to ſneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE ſe literis, in literas, *to hide or ſhut up one's ſelf among books*, ſe domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in ſilvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to impriſon*; carmen, *to compoſe*; lumina, *to cloſe*, Ovid. Jura, *to eſtabliſh*; terrâ, ſepulchro, in ſepulchro, *to bury.*

DEDERE ſe alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, *to ſurrender*; Deditus præceptori, and ſtudiis, *fond of*; vino epuliſque, *engaged in*, Nep. deditâ operâ, *on purpoſe.*

EDERE librum, and in lucem, *to publiſh*; ovum, *to lay*; ſonos, cantus, riſus, gemitus, queſtus, hinnitum, pugnam, ſtragem, *to ſound, ſing, &c.* munus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a ſhew of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; fœtus, *to bring forth*; extremum ſpiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture.*

OBDERE peſſulum foribus, *to bolt the door.*

PRODERE arcem hoſtibus, *to betray*; aliquid poſteris, *v.* memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to poſterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, ſe ſibi, *to revive*; animam *v.* vitam, *to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to tranſlate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to reſemble*; epiſtolam alicui, *to deliver.*

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to ſpur*; ſpiritus alicui, *to encourage.*

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to truſt*; pecuniam ei per ſyngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet; Itaque credo, ſi, &c. *I ſuppoſe*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hoſtes, *to rout.*

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to ſpend*; odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop*, gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere; omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell.*

G O.

JUNGERE ſe cum aliquo, alicui, and ad aliquem, dextram dextræ; equos currui; amnem ponte, *to make a bridge.*

ADJUNGERE acceſſionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's houſe*; animum ad ſtudia, *to apply.*

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enſem, *to draw*; frondes, *to lop off*; glandes, baccas, *to beat down*; rem, *to waſte one's fortune*, Hor. littus, *to touch, to bruſh* or *graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head.*

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach*; reges, res ſummas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione,

cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to*; forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns.*

FINGERE orationem, *to polish*; oratorem, *to form*; se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt*: Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break*; navem, *to suffer shipwreck*; fœdus, fidem, *to violate*: sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue.*

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks*: vitam, *to live*: prædas, *to plunder*: fabulam, *to act a play*; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to triumph*; nugas, *to trifle*; ambages, *to beat about the bush*; stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard*; rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent*; causam, *to plead*; de re, *to speak*; radices, *to take root*; cuniculos, *to undermine*; undam, *to raise a steam*; animam, *to be at the last gasp*; alias res, *to be inattentive*; festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe*; actum, *v.* rem actam, *to labour in vain*; censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes*; lege in aliquem, and cum aliquo, *to go to law with one*; *hence* actor, *a plaintiff*; in hereditatem, *to claim*; cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before*; decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old*; id agitur, *that is the question*; libertas agitur, *v.* de libertate, *is at stake*; actum est de libertate, *is lost*; actum est, ilicet, *all is over*; actum est de pace, *was treated about*; cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky or well used*; hoc age, *mind what you are about.* Civitas læta agere, *for* erat, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad *v.* in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, *to force to enlist*; arbitrum, i. e. agere *vel* cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together*; ad militiam, *to force to enlist*; senatum, *to assemble*; in senatum, *sc.* minis, pignoribus captis, &c. *to force to attend*; agmen, *to rally, to bring up*; lac, *to curdle*; jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genere cogere, *to digest, to arrange.*

EXIGERE foras, *to drive out, to divorce*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to require*; sarta tecta, *sc.* et, *i. e.* sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, *to inflict*; sua nomina, *to demand or call in one's debts*; ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend*; aliquid ad normam, *to try or examine*; columnam ad perpendiculum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight*; monumentum, *to finish*, Hor. tempus and modum, *to settle*, Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back*; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money*: hostes sub imperium, *to reduce.*

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along*; vela, *to furl the sails*; habitum, *to catch one's breath*; milites, *to enlist*; aliquem in senatum, in Patres, *to choose*; sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege*, Hor.

H O.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, *to prolong*; purpuras, *to spin*; aliquid in religionem, *to scruple*; navem remulco, *to tow.*

DETRAHERE aliquem, *to draw down*; alicui, *v.* de aliquo, de fama, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame*; aliquid alicui, *to take by force*; laudem, *v.* de laudibus; novem

novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehi in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehi longiùs, *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consulitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for* a me, *I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, vel classem, *to land on*; se aliquo, Ter. ad villam nostram navis appelletur, Cic. animum ad philosophiam, *to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, *to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de *vel* e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce*; annulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, *to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, morte, e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, *vel* in rem insumere, *to bestow pains*; sumo tantum, *vel* hoc mihi, *I take this upon me*.

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effigiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, and reprendere v. retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not* ante; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*: poculа, *to stake* or *lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; ferocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquem

aliquem in gratiam *v.* gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, *to calm*: hominem coloribus, saxo, *to paint, engrave*, Hor. pecuniam in fœnore, *to lay out at interest*; templa, *to build*, Virg. Venti posuere, *are hush'd*, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, *suppose, grant*, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. *to compose*: lites, *to settle*: bellum, *to finish by treaty*: parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare*: manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

DEPONERE *v.* ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy*; imperium and demittere, *to lay down a command.*

EXPONERE rem, *to set forth* or *explain*: frumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, fœtus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, *sc.* in terram, *to land.*

IMPONERE onus alicui *v.* in aliquem; aliquem in equum, *to set upon*: personam *v.* partes duriores ei, *to lay a task* or *duty on one*: alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer*: vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail*, Nep. manum summum *v.* extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, *to finish*: pontem flumini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose*: pignori, *to pledge*: manum fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before*: edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere: congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.*

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*; testamentum, *v.* subjicere, *to forge.*

CANERE aliquem, *to praise*: signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle*: receptui, *rarely* -um, *to sound a retreat*: tibiâ, *to play on the pipe*: ad tibiam, *to sing to it*: palinodiam, *to utter a recantation.*

STERNERE lectos, *to spread* or *cover the couches*: equos, *to harness*: viam, *to pave*: æquora, *to calm*, Virg.

P O.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear*: somnos, quietem, *to sleep*: viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alterius, *to censure*: labores, virtutes, *to diminish* or *obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate*: vocem *v.* silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out*: stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion*: nubem, *to break*, Virg.

R O.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, *to seek* or *gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise*: ex aliquo: & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, *to put to the rack*: in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ACQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after*: aliquem capitis, *v.* -te, *to accuse* or *try for a capital crime.*

GERERE res, *to perform*: negotium malè, *to manage*: consulatum, *to bear, to manage*: se bene *vel* malè, *to behave*: exercitum, *to conduct*, Sallust. morem ei, *vel* morigerari, *to humour*: civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of*: inimicitias *vel* simultatem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity* or *variance with.*

INGERERE

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh againſt.*

SUGGERERE aliquid, ei, *to ſuggeſt, to hint*; ſumptus his rebus, *to ſupply* or *afford*; Horatium Bruto, *to chooſe in place of, to put after*, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raiſe, to ſpread accuſations.*

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hoſtibus inter ſe, *to engage.*

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, *to free*; in ſervitutem, *to reduce*; divinam majeſtatem, *to claim.*

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely* eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. *to aſk*; urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem ſagittâ, lapide, *to aim at*; conſulatum, pœnas ab aliquo, & repetere, *to puniſh.*

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's ſenſes*; in eum competit actio, *an action lies againſt him*, Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand reſtitution*; bona lege, *v.* proſequi lite, *to recover by law*; caſtra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriâ, *to call to mind*; altè, *to trace from the beginning.* Mihi nihil ſuppetit, multa ſuppetunt, *I have*; ſi vita ſuppetet, *if life ſhall remain*, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; in ſuffragia, *to ſend the people to vote*; aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; talos, *to throw the dice*; ſenatum, *to diſmiſs*; timorem, *to lay aſide*; in acta, *to regiſter, to record*; ſanguinem, *vel* emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; ſigna timoris, *to ſhew*; vocem, *to utter, to ſpeak*; habenas, *v.* remittere, *to ſlacken*; manu et emittere, *to free a ſlave*; filium emancipare, *to free a ſon from the power of his father*; ſub jugum, *to make to paſs under the yoke*; inferias manibus diis, *to ſacrifice to the infernal gods*; rem, *v.* de re, *to omit*; mitto rem, *I ſay nothing of fortune*, Ter. in poſſeſſionem bonorum, *to give the poſſeſſion of the debtor's effects*; miſit orare, ut venirem; *i. e.* aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, *v.* cauſam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aſpectum, *to loſe*, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit*; equum immittere, and permittere, *to gallop*; delictum in ſe, *to commit a fault*; aves non admiſerunt, *have not given a favourable omen*, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit*; ſe alicui, *v.* in fidem alicujus, *to entruſt*; prælium, *to engage*; exercitum pugnæ, rem in caſum ancipitis eventûs prælii, *to riſk a battle*, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter ſe, *to ſet at variance*, or *by the ears*; rem eò, *to bring to that paſs*; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, *to match or pair*; committere, ut, *to cauſe*; incommoda ſua legibus and judiciis, *to ſeek redreſs by law.*

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati *compromiſerunt*, H. S. quingenis in ſingulos apud M. Catonem depoſitis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra feciſſet, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromiſe or agreement*, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to diſband*; uxorem, and repudiare, nuntium *v.* repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promiſe*; capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow*; divis cætera, *to leave*, Horat. ſe in fidem *v.* fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hoſtem; rem ſuffragiis populi, *to let the people decide*; tribunatum vexandis conſulibus, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

REMITTERE

REMITTERE animum, *to eaſe*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de ſupplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; juſticium, *to diſcontinue*; pugnam, *to ſlacken*; remittet explorare, *neglects*, Salluſt.

SUBMITTERE faſces populo, *to lower*; ſe *v.* animum, *to ſubmit, to humble*; percuſſores alicui, *to ſuborn aſſaſſins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to paſs over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; ſolum, *to go into baniſhment*; id ei vitio, *v.* crimini, & in crimen, *to blame*; in ſuperbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca *vel* ex Græcis in Latinum, *to tranſlate*; policem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus *vel* cauſa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *proſper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to obſerve*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to puniſh*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum, *v.* animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, *oftener* animadvertere, *to puniſh*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to ſteal, to pilfer*; promiſſum & receptum, *ſc.* Dolobellæ conſulatum, intervertit, ad ſeque tranſtulit, *treacherouſly withheld*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos, curſu, *to outſtrip*; deſiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum ſupplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; ſe in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec ſiſti poſſe, *nor could the ſtate be ſaved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to ſtand by*; ad fores; contra, ſuper eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to ſtand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*; Ovid. Spes in velis conſiſtebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione conſiſtit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to ſtand upon*; veſtigiis ejus; viam, *v.* viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, *v.* rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to inſiſt upon, to urge*.

OBSISTERE ei, *to ſtop, to oppoſe*.

RESISTERE ei, *to reſiſt*.

SUBSISTERE, *to ſtand ſtill*; ſumptui, *to bear*.

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; verſurâ, *to pay debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promiſe*, or according to others, *to perform*, Ter. And. IV. I. 19. litem æſtimatam, *to pay the fine impoſed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to diſcharge*; obſidionem urbis, *v.* urbem obſidione, *to raiſe a ſiege*; navem, e portu, *to ſet ſail*; epiſtolam, *v.* reſignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; ſolvitur in ſomnos, Virg. Oratio ſoluto, *i. e.* libera, numeris non aſtricta & devincta, *proſe*; ſolve metus, *diſmiſs*, Virg.

DISSOLVERE ſocietatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, *v.* ora, *to break ſilence*, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulverem, *to reduce to*.

FOURTH

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex *v.* ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one, at*, sæpe hoc audivi de patre, *for* ex patre, Cic. Audire bene *v.* malè apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; rexque paterque audisti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, *occurs*, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia and itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*; ego et frater conveniemus, copiæ convenient, *will meet together*; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt. *I and my brother are agreed*; sævis inter se convenit ursis, Juv. Ipsi secum non convenit, *vel* ipse, *he is inconsistent*; pax convenit, *vel* conventa est, *is agreed upon*; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, *agree*; calcei pedibus *v.* ad pedes conveniunt, *fit, fuit*; hoc in illum convenit: Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, *ought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in manum, *the usual form of marriage, named* Coempto, *whereby women were called* matresfamilias.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene *vel* malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de *v.* in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree: So* dissentire; *et* ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat. Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publickly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery.*

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; *sometimes* alicui, ad *v.* apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras: sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assequi, consequi, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to attain.* Consequi hereditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad *v.* in summa, *to aim at*; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive*; gradibus, *to ascend.*

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour.*

IR-

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v.* -no, -re; ejus opinionis, *v.* ea opinione; in maxima ſpe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in *vel* cum imperio; magno periculo, *v.* in periculo; in tuto; apud ſe, *in his ſenſes*; ſui juris, *v.* mancipii, ſui potens, *v.* in ſua poteſtate; *to be at his own diſpoſal*; Res eſt in vado, *is ſafe*, Ter. Eſt animus, *ſc.* mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Eſt ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cauſe*; bene, male eſt mihi, *with me*; nihil eſt mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*; Quid eſt tibi, *ſc.* rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might ſee*; religio eſt mihi id facere, *I ſcruple to do it*; ſi eſt, ut facere velit, ut facturus ſit, ut admiſerit, &c. *for* ſi velit, &c. Ter. Eſt ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuſta ſulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum eſt facere, *ſc.* mihi, *I am reſolved*, Ter. Non certum eſt, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Caſſius quærere ſolebat, CUI BONO FUERIT; Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADESSE pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be preſent*; alicui, *to favour, to aſſiſt*; ſcribendo, *v.* eſſe ad ſcribendum, *to ſubſcribe one's name to a decree of the ſenate*, Cic. conſilio utrique, *to be a counſellor to*, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab ſignis, *to be abſent*; alicui, *v.* deeſſe, *to be wanting, not to aſſiſt*; a ſole, *to ſtand out of the ſun*; ſumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. abeſſe a perſona principis, *to be inconſiſtent with the character*, Nep. Paulum *v.* parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abeſt ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is ſo far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a ſocietate ſceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v.* in convivio, *to be at a feaſt*; anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; ſtulto intelligens quid intereſt, Ter. Hoc. dominus & pater intereſt, Id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc intereſt, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum intereſt, utrum, *it is of great importance.* Pons inter eos intereſt, *is between*, Cic.

PRÆESSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, quæſtioni, *to preſide in or at.*

OBESSE ei, *to hurt, to hinder.*

SUPERESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to ſurvive*; modo vita ſuperſit, *ſc.* mihi, *if I live*; ſupereſt, ut, *it remains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad ſaga, *to go to war*: in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in ſententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, menſis it, *paſſes.*

ABIRE magiſtratu, *to lay down an office*; a conſpectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menſes abierunt, *have paſt*, Ter. Non hoc tibi ſic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation.*

ADIRE periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

EXIRE vitâ, e, *v.* de vita, *to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

INIRE magiſtratum; ſuffragium,

gium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *vel* ab eo, *to gain his favour*; Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of; but we seldom say*, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years*.

Obire diem edicti, *vel* auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, *vel* morte; diem supremum, *v.* diem, *to die*.

Præire alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, *vel* sacramentum alicui, *to repeat* or *read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe* or *direct by crying*, Cic.

Prodire in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, *is past*, Nep.

Redire in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses*.

Subire murum, *vel* -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem *vel* -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into*.

VELLE aliquem, *sc.* alloqui *vel* conventum, *to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum vòlo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc.* esse, *I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, *sc.* esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose* or *make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose* or *pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiam de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend* or *declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

Conferre benevolentiam alicui, in *vel* erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium ad *vel* in rem, and impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, *vel* ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, *vel* cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quinct.

Deferre situlam *vel* sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; *rarely* alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitûs, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, *sc.* partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE *vel* transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. and Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, and cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem, *vel* periculum capitis alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PRÆFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis, and anteferre, anteponere, *to prefer*. Prælatus equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomœrium, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem illio, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum *v.* pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab. *vel* ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, and in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina *vel* summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in *v.* inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in *vel* inter deos, and reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam, linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum and rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

FINIS

ADVERTISEMENT.

MORE than twenty years have elapsed, since the foregoing Grammar was written in its present form and arrangement. In the mean time, the Author has diligently consulted the Latin Classics and the most approved Latin Grammars, for materials to improve the work.

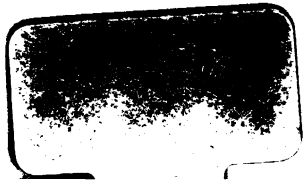
Many of the examples of declension, a number of rules in Syntax and Prosody, as well as various observations, are taken from Lilly, Shaw, Clarke, Holmes, Cheever, Ross, Adam, and others.

The disposition of the work, it is hoped, will, on several accounts, be found useful; particularly, in superseding the necessity of marking such parts as should be committed to memory, since, in general, other matters are placed separately, in notes.

ERRATA.

THE following typographical errors, and a few others of less importance, may be easily rectified with the pen.

Page 10, line 11 from the bottom, for *exampły*, read *exempli*.
P. 21, l. 15 from the bottom, for *amusus*, r. *amussis*.
P. 24, last line, for Note †, r. Note ‖.
P. 28, l. 12 from the top, for D. Tĕn-ĕro, -ĕræ, -ĕri (in a few copies) r. D. Tĕn-ĕro, -ĕræ, -ĕro.
P. 43, l. 13 from the bottom, for *averĭtis*, r. *averītis*.
P. 62, l. 3 from the bottom, for *it is*, r. *they are*.

JUL 24 1941

[redacted]